



# New Crossland

Owner's Manual



# Contents

<b>Emergency numbers</b>		
<b>For emergency service call the Vauxhall Incident Manager</b>		<b>0800 55 33 88 (Free Linkline)*</b>
<b>Vauxhall Assistance General Enquiries</b>		<b>0845 7565 565</b>
<b>You will need to provide:</b>	Vehicle registration number	Model and colour of your Vauxhall
	Contact telephone number	Details of your precise location

\* Calls may be chargeable from mobile phones

Introduction .....	2
Keys, doors and windows .....	6
Seats, restraints .....	26
Storage .....	47
Instruments and controls .....	55
Lighting .....	87
Infotainment system .....	96
Climate control .....	160
Driving and operating .....	171
Vehicle care .....	229
Service and maintenance .....	270
Technical data .....	275
Customer information .....	284
Index .....	292

# Introduction

Fuel	Designation	<input type="text"/>		
Engine oil	Grade	<input type="text"/>		
	Viscosity	<input type="text"/>		
Tyre pressure	Tyre size		Front	Rear
	Summer tyres	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
	Winter tyres	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
Weights	Gross vehicle weight rating	<input type="text"/>		
	- Kerb weight, basic model	<input type="text"/>		
	= Loading	<input type="text"/>		

## Vehicle specific data

Please enter your vehicle's data on the previous page to keep it easily accessible.

Please refer to the sections "Service and maintenance", "Technical data", the vehicle's identification plate and national registration documents.

## Introduction

Your vehicle is a designed combination of advanced technology, safety, environmental friendliness and economy.

This Owner's Manual provides you with all the necessary information to enable you to drive your vehicle safely and efficiently.

Some functions are only operational when ignition is switched on or when the engine is running.

Make sure your passengers are aware of the possible risk of accident and injury which may result from improper use of the vehicle.

You must always comply with the specific laws and regulations of the country that you are in. These laws may differ from the information in this Owner's Manual.

Disregarding the description given in this manual may affect your warranty.

When this Owner's Manual refers to a workshop visit, we recommend your Vauxhall Authorised Repairer.

All Vauxhall Authorised Repairers provide first-class service at reasonable prices. Experienced mechanics trained by Vauxhall work according to specific Vauxhall instructions.

The customer literature pack should always be kept ready to hand in the vehicle.

## Using this manual

- This manual describes all options and features available for this model. **Certain descriptions, including those for display and menu functions, may not apply to your vehicle due to model**

**variant, country specifications, special equipment or accessories.**

- The table of contents at the beginning of this manual and within each section shows where the information is located.
- The index will enable you to search for specific information.
- This Owner's Manual depicts left-hand drive vehicles. Operation is similar for right-hand drive vehicles.
- The Owner's Manual uses the engine identifier code. The corresponding sales designation and engineering code can be found in the section "Technical data".
- Directional data, e.g. left or right, or front or back, always relate to the direction of travel.
- Displays may not support your specific language.
- Display messages and interior labelling are written in **bold** letters.

## Danger, Warnings and Cautions

### **Danger**

Text marked **⚠ Danger** provides information on risk of fatal injury. Disregarding this information may endanger life.

### **Warning**

Text marked **⚠ Warning** provides information on risk of accident or injury. Disregarding this information may lead to injury.

### **Caution**

Text marked **Caution** provides information on possible damage to the vehicle. Disregarding this information may lead to vehicle damage.

## Symbols

Page references are indicated with ⇨. ⇨ means "see page".

Chronological order to select menu entries in the vehicle personalisation is indicated with ➤.

Page references and index entries refer to the indented headings given in the section table of content.

Thank you for choosing a Vauxhall.

We wish you many hours of pleasurable driving.

**Your Vauxhall Team**



## Keys, doors and windows

<b>Keys, locks</b> .....	<b>6</b>
Keys .....	6
Radio remote control .....	7
Electronic key system .....	8
Central locking system .....	10
Automatic locking .....	14
Child locks .....	14
<b>Doors</b> .....	<b>15</b>
Load compartment .....	15
<b>Vehicle security</b> .....	<b>16</b>
Anti-theft locking system .....	16
Anti-theft alarm system .....	17
Immobiliser .....	19
<b>Exterior mirrors</b> .....	<b>19</b>
Convex shape .....	19
Electric adjustment .....	19
Folding mirrors .....	20
Heated mirrors .....	20
<b>Interior mirrors</b> .....	<b>21</b>
Manual anti-dazzle .....	21
Automatic anti-dazzle .....	21
<b>Windows</b> .....	<b>21</b>
Windscreen .....	21

Manual windows .....	22
Power windows .....	22
Heated rear window .....	23
Heated windscreen .....	24
Sun visors .....	24
<b>Roof</b> .....	<b>24</b>
Glass panel .....	24

## Keys, locks

### Keys

<b>Caution</b>
Do not attach heavy or bulky items to the ignition key.

### Replacement keys

The key number is specified on a detachable tag.

The key number must be quoted when ordering replacement keys as it is a component of the immobiliser system.

Locks ⇨ 266.

Central locking ⇨ 10.

Starting the engine ⇨ 174.

Radio remote control ⇨ 7.

Electronic key ⇨ 8.

The code number of the adapter for the locking wheel nuts is specified on a card. It must be quoted when ordering a replacement adapter.

Wheel changing ⇨ 256.



## Key with foldaway key section

### Danger

Never remove the key from ignition switch during driving as this will cause, depending on version, steering wheel lock.






Press button to extend. To fold the key, first press the button.

## Lock cylinders

Designed to free-wheel if they are forcefully rotated without the correct key or if the correct key is not fully inserted. To reset, insert the correct key only half way and turn cylinder until its slot is vertical, remove key then re-insert it. If the cylinder still free-wheels, insert the key only half way and turn the key through 180° and repeat operation.

## Radio remote control



-  : unlocks the vehicle
-  : locks the vehicle
-  : long press unlocks and opens the tailgate

Enables operation of the following functions via the use of the remote control buttons:

- central locking system ⇨ 10
- anti-theft locking system ⇨ 16
- anti-theft alarm system ⇨ 17
- tailgate unlocking ⇨ 10
- power windows ⇨ 22
- mirrors folding ⇨ 20

The remote control has a range of up to 100 m, but may also be much less due to external influences. The hazard warning flashers confirm operation.

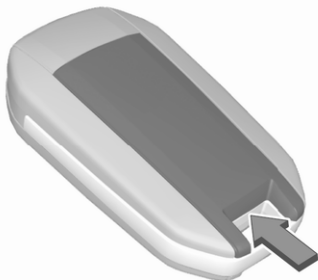
Handle with care, protect from moisture and high temperatures and avoid unnecessary operation.

### Replacing battery in radio remote control

Replace the battery as soon as the system no longer operates properly or the range is reduced.



Batteries do not belong in household waste. They must be disposed of at an appropriate recycling collection point.



1. To unclip the cover insert a small screwdriver between the back cover and the remote control.
2. Remove the back cover.
3. Extract the flat battery from its location.
4. Replace battery with a battery of the same type. Pay attention to the installation position.
5. Clip the cover in place.

### Fault

If the central locking system cannot be operated with the radio remote control, the cause may be one of the following:

- Fault in radio remote control.
- Electronic key is out of reception range.
- The battery voltage is too low.
- Frequent, repeated operation of the radio remote control while not in range.

- Overload of the central locking system by operating at frequent intervals, the power supply is interrupted for a short time.
- Interference from higher-power radio waves from other sources.

Manual unlocking ⇨ 10.

### Electronic key system

#### ⚠ Warning

The electronic key can affect a pacemaker.

Keep the electronic key away from the breast.



Enables a keyless operation of the following functions:

- central locking system ⇨ 10
- ignition switching on and starting the engine ⇨ 174

The electronic key simply needs to be on the driver's person.

Additionally, the electronic key includes the functionality of the radio remote control ⇨ 7.

Handle with care, protect from moisture and high temperatures and avoid unnecessary operation.

#### Notice

To save battery power, the keyless functions are set to stand-by after 21 days of non-use. To reactivate the functions, press a button on the electronic key.

### Replacing battery in electronic key

Replace the battery as soon as the system no longer operates properly or the range is reduced. The need for battery replacement is indicated by a message in the Driver Information Centre ⇨ 82.



Batteries do not belong in household waste. They must be disposed of at an appropriate recycling collection point.



1. To unclip the cover insert a small screwdriver in the cutout.
2. Remove the cover.
3. Extract the flat battery from its location.

4. Replace battery with a battery of the same type. Pay attention to the installation position.
5. Clip the cover in place.

### Fault

If the central locking cannot be operated or the engine cannot be started, the cause may be one of the following:

- Fault in electronic key.
- Electronic key is out of reception range.
- The battery voltage is too low.
- Overload of the central locking system by operating at frequent intervals, the power supply is interrupted for a short time.
- Interference from higher-power radio waves from other sources.

To rectify the cause of the fault, change the position of the electronic key.

Manual unlocking ⇨ 10.

## Central locking system

Unlocks and locks doors, load compartment and fuel filler flap.

A pull on an interior door handle unlocks and opens the respective door.

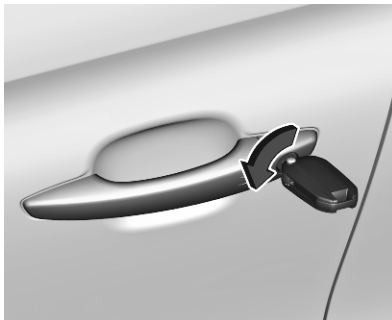
### Notice

In the event of an accident in which airbags or belt pretensioners are deployed, the vehicle is automatically unlocked.

Automatic locking ⇨ 14

## Rigid key

### Unlocking



Turn key in the lock cylinder at the left front door.

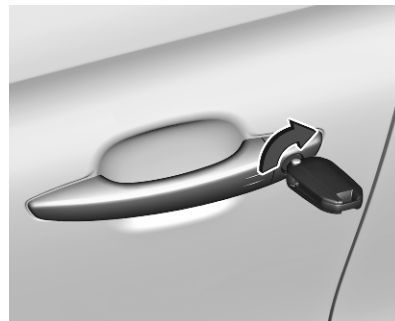
Unlocking mode can be set in the vehicle personalisation menu in the Info Display. Two settings are selectable:

- All doors, load compartment and fuel filler flap will be unlocked by turning the key once.
- Only the left front door and fuel filler flap will be unlocked by turning the key once. To unlock entire vehicle, turn the key twice.

Vehicle personalisation ⇨ 83.

### Locking

Close doors, load compartment and fuel filler flap.



Turn key in the lock cylinder at the left front door.

If the vehicle is not closed properly, the central locking system will not work.




## Remote control operation

### Unlocking




Press .

Unlocking mode can be set in the vehicle personalisation menu in the Info Display. Two settings are selectable:

- All doors, load compartment and fuel filler flap will be unlocked by pressing  once.
- Only the driver's door and fuel filler flap will be unlocked by pressing  once. To unlock entire vehicle, press  twice.

Vehicle personalisation ⇨ 83.

### Unlocking the tailgate

Press  longer to unlock the tailgate only.

Vehicle personalisation ⇨ 83.

Unlocking and opening the tailgate ⇨ 15.

### Locking

Close doors, load compartment and fuel filler flap.



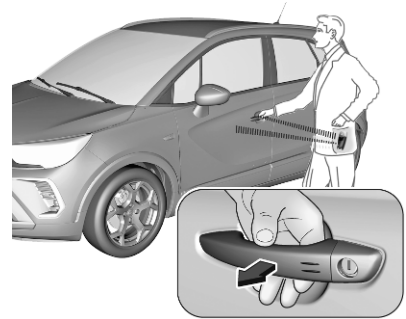
Press .

If the vehicle is not closed properly, the central locking system will not work.

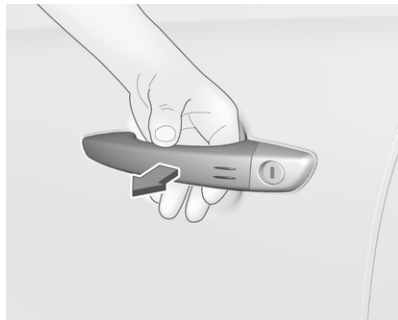
### Confirmation

Operation of the central locking system is confirmed by the hazard warning flashers.

### Electronic key system operation



The electronic key must be outside the vehicle, within a range of approx. 1 m of the relevant door side.

**Unlocking**

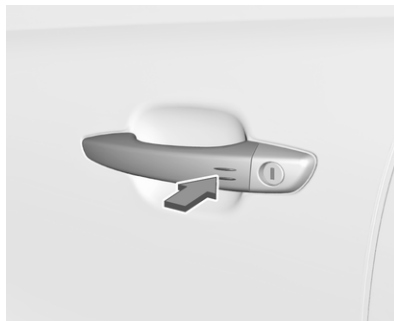
Pass hand behind one of the front door handles to unlock the vehicle or press the tailgate button.

Unlocking mode can be set in the vehicle personalisation. Three settings are selectable:

- Only the driver's door and fuel filler flap will be unlocked by passing hand behind the driver's door handle.

- All doors, load compartment and fuel filler flap will be unlocked by passing a hand behind the passenger's door handle or by pressing the tailgate button.
- Only the tailgate will be unlocked by pressing the tailgate button.

Vehicle personalisation ⇨ 83

**Locking**

Press marking of the front door handles.

Entire vehicle will be locked.

If the vehicle is not closed properly, the electronic key remains in the vehicle or the ignition is not off, locking will not be permitted and a warning chime sounds.

**Unlocking and opening the tailgate**

The tailgate can be unlocked and opened by pushing the tailgate button when the electronic key is in range. The doors remain locked depending on the configuration in the vehicle personalisation.

Load compartment ⇨ 15

Vehicle personalisation ⇨ 83

**Confirmation**


Operation of central locking system is confirmed by the hazard warning flashers.

**Central locking button**

Locks or unlocks entire vehicle from the passenger compartment via a switch.



Press  to lock. The LED in the button illuminates.

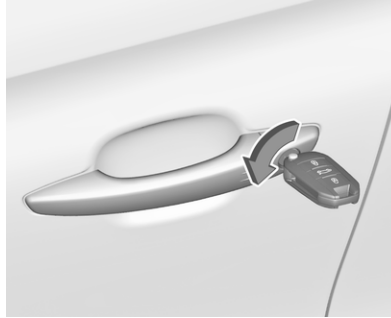
Press  again to unlock. The LED in the button extinguishes.

### Operation with the key in case of a central locking system fault

In case of a fault, e.g. vehicle battery or remote control / electronic key battery is discharged, the vehicle can be locked or unlocked with the mechanical key.

### Manual unlocking

Electronic key: press and hold the latch to extract the integral key.

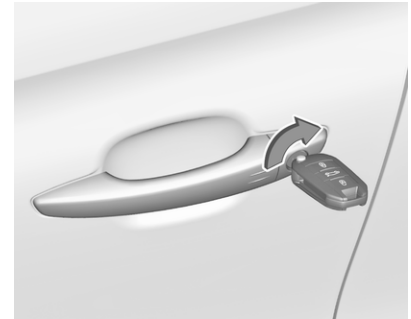


Manually unlock the left front door by inserting and turning the key in the lock cylinder. With working central locking system the vehicle will be unlocked.

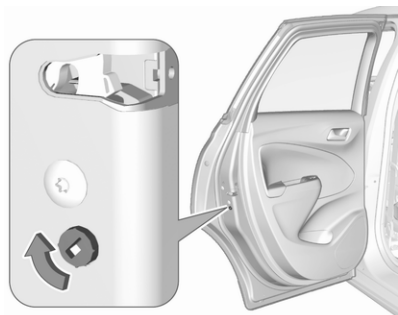
By switching on the ignition, the anti-theft locking system is deactivated.

The other doors can be opened by pulling the interior handle. The load compartment and fuel filler flap will possibly not be unlocked.

### Manual locking



Manually lock the left front door by inserting and turning the key in the lock cylinder. With working central locking system the vehicle will be locked.



To lock the other doors, first make sure the child lock is not activated. Then remove the black cover by inserting a key and turning clockwise. Insert key into the recess and move latch sideways.


Remove key and attach the black cover.

The fuel filler flap and tailgate are possibly not locked.

## Automatic locking


### Automatic locking after driving off

This system allows automatic locking as soon as the speed of the vehicle exceeds 6 mph.

If the vehicle is not closed properly, the automatic locking does not take place. This is signalled by the sound of the locks rebounding, accompanied by illumination of  in the instrument panel, an audible signal and the display of an alert message.

### Activation or deactivation



With the ignition on, press  until an audible signal starts and a corresponding message is displayed.

The state of the system stays in memory when switching off the ignition.

### Automatic relock after unlocking

This feature automatically relocks the vehicle a short time after unlocking with the remote control or electronic key, provided vehicle has not been opened.

## Child locks

### Warning

Use the child locks whenever children are occupying the rear seats.



## Mechanical child locks



Turn the red child lock in the rear doors to the horizontal position by using a key. The door cannot be opened from the inside.

To deactivate, turn the child lock to the vertical position.

## Electric child locks



Remotely operated system to prevent opening of the rear doors using the interior handles.

### Switching on

Press . The indicator light in the button comes on, accompanied by a confirmation message. This indicator light remains on until the child lock is switched off.

### Switching off

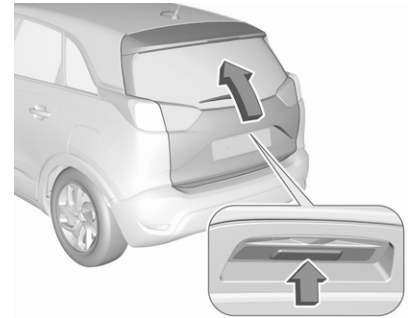
Press again. The indicator light in the button goes off, accompanied by a confirmation message.

## Doors

### Load compartment

### Tailgate

### Opening



Press the tailgate button and open the tailgate.

## Closing



Use the interior handle.

Do not push the tailgate button whilst closing as this will open the tailgate again.

Central locking system ⇨ 10.

### General hints for operating tailgate

#### **⚠ Danger**

Do not drive with the tailgate open or ajar, e.g. when transporting bulky objects, since toxic exhaust

gases, which cannot be seen or smelled, could enter the vehicle. This can cause unconsciousness and even death.

#### **Caution**

Before opening the tailgate, check overhead obstructions, e.g. a garage door, to avoid damage to the tailgate. Always check the moving area above and behind the tailgate.

#### **Notice**

The installation of certain heavy accessories onto the tailgate may affect its ability to remain open.

#### **Notice**

At low outside temperatures the tailgate may not open fully by itself. In this event, lift the tailgate manually to its normal end position.

## Vehicle security

### Anti-theft locking system

#### **⚠ Warning**


Do not use the system if there are people in the vehicle! The doors cannot be unlocked from the inside.

The system deadlocks all the doors. All doors must be closed otherwise the system cannot be activated.

Unlocking the vehicle disables the mechanical anti-theft locking system. This is not possible with the central locking button.

## Activating



Press  on the radio remote control twice within five seconds.

Or with electronic key system press twice the marking on one of the front door handles.

## Anti-theft alarm system

The anti-theft alarm system is combined with the central locking system.


It monitors:

- doors, tailgate, bonnet
- passenger compartment including adjoining load compartment
- vehicle inclination, e.g. if it is raised
- ignition


## Activation

All doors must be closed.

The electronic key of the electronic key system must not remain in the vehicle.

- Radio remote control: activated 30 seconds after locking the vehicle by pressing  once.
- Electronic key system: activated 30 seconds after locking the vehicle by pressing marking on one of the front door handles.



- Radio remote control: directly by pressing  twice within five seconds.
- Electronic key system: directly by pressing twice the marking on one of the front door handles.

## Notice

Changes to the vehicle interior such as the use of seat covers and open windows, could impair the function of passenger compartment monitoring.

### Activation without monitoring of passenger compartment and vehicle inclination



Switch off the monitoring of passenger compartment and vehicle inclination when animals are being left in the vehicle, because of high volume ultrasonic signals and because movements could trigger the alarm. Also switch off when the vehicle is on a ferry or train.

1. Close tailgate, bonnet, windows.
2. Press . LED in the button illuminates for a maximum of ten minutes.

3. Close doors.
4. Activate the anti-theft alarm system.

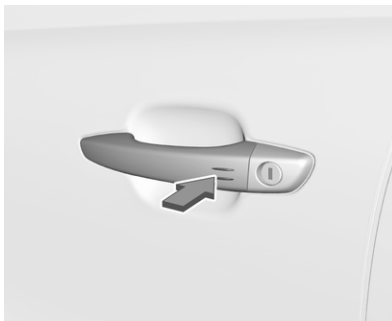
### Indication

LED in the button flashes if the anti-theft alarm system is activated.

Seek the assistance of a workshop in the event of faults.

### Deactivation

Radio remote control: Unlocking the vehicle by pressing deactivates the anti-theft alarm system.



Electronic key system: Unlocking the vehicle by pressing marking on one of the front door handles deactivates the anti-theft alarm system.

The electronic key must be outside the vehicle, within a range of approx. 1 m of the relevant door side.

The system is not deactivated by unlocking the driver's door with the key or with the central locking button in the passenger compartment.

### Alarm

When triggered, the alarm siren sounds and the hazard warning lights flash simultaneously. The number and duration of alarm signals are stipulated by legislation.

The anti-theft alarm system can be deactivated by pressing or switching on the ignition.

Electronic key system: The anti-theft alarm system can be deactivated by pressing marking on one of the front door handles.

A triggered alarm, which has not been interrupted by the driver, will be indicated by the hazard warning

lights. They will flash quickly four times the next time the vehicle is unlocked with the radio remote control.

If the vehicle's battery is to be disconnected (e.g. for maintenance work), the alarm siren must be deactivated as follows: switch the ignition on then off, then disconnect the vehicle's battery within 15 seconds.

If the battery has been reconnected (e.g. after maintenance work), wait for ten minutes to restart the engine.

## Immobiliser

The system is part of the ignition switch and checks whether the vehicle is allowed to be started with the key being used.

The immobiliser is activated automatically at the end of a trip.

### Notice

Radio Frequency Identification (RFID) tags may cause interference with the key. Do not have it placed near the key when starting the vehicle.

### Notice

The immobiliser does not lock the doors. Always lock the vehicle after leaving it ⇨ 10.

Switch on the anti-theft alarm system ⇨ 17.

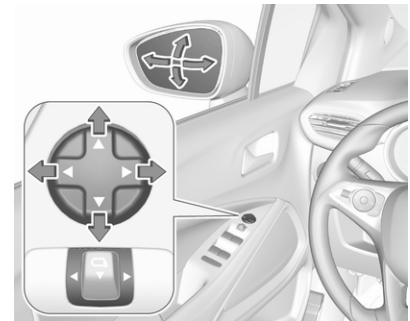
Emergency operation of electronic key ⇨ 173.

## Exterior mirrors

### Convex shape

The shape of the mirror makes objects appear smaller, which will affect the ability to estimate distances.

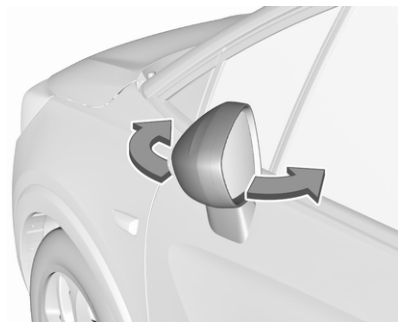
### Electric adjustment



Select the relevant exterior mirror by pushing the mirror button to the left or right.

Then swivel the control to adjust the mirror.

## Folding mirrors



For pedestrian safety, the exterior mirrors will swing out of their normal mounting position if they are struck with sufficient force. Reposition the mirror by applying slight pressure to the mirror housing.

## Electric folding



Pull mirror button rearwards. Both exterior mirrors will fold.

Pull mirror button rearwards again to return both exterior mirrors to their original position.

If an electrically folded mirror is manually extended, pulling mirror button rearwards will only electrically extend the other mirror.

## Automatic folding

When the vehicle is unlocked, the mirrors swing to their normal mounting position. When the vehicle is locked, the mirrors are folded down.

To enable or disable automatic folding of the exterior mirrors, consult a workshop.

## Heated mirrors



Operated by pressing  REAR.

The heating switches off automatically after a certain time depending on the outside temperature.

Heated rear window ⇨ 23.

## Interior mirrors

### Manual anti-dazzle



To reduce dazzle, adjust the lever on the underside of the mirror housing.

### Automatic anti-dazzle



Dazzle from following vehicles is automatically reduced, when driving in the dark.

## Windows

### Windscreen

#### Windscreen stickers



Do not attach stickers such as toll road stickers or similar on the windscreen in the area of the interior mirror. Keep the sensor free from dust, dirt and ice. Otherwise, the detection zone of the rain sensor / light sensor and the view area of the camera in the mirror housing could be restricted.

Sensors ⇨ 59, ⇨ 88

## Windscreen replacement

### Caution

If the vehicle has a front-looking camera sensor for the driver assistance systems, it is very important that any windscreen replacement is performed accurately according to Vauxhall specifications. Otherwise, these systems may not work properly and there is a risk of unexpected behaviour and / or messages from these systems.

## Manual windows

The rear door windows can be opened or closed manually with the window cranks.

## Power windows

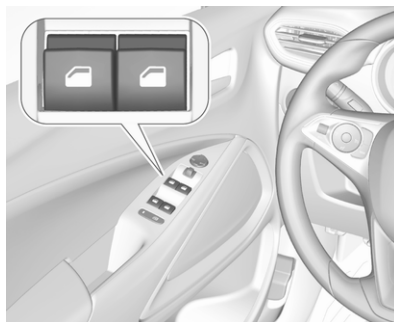
### ⚠ Warning

Take care when operating the power windows. Risk of injury, particularly to children.

If there are children on the rear seats, switch on the child safety system for the power windows.

Keep a close watch on the windows when closing them. Ensure that nothing becomes trapped in them as they move.

Switch on ignition to operate power windows.



Operate the switch for the respective window by pushing to open or pulling to close.

Pushing or pulling gently to the first detent: window moves up or down as long as the switch is operated.

Pushing or pulling firmly to the second detent then releasing: window moves up or down automatically with safety function enabled. To stop movement, operate the switch once more in the same direction.

### Safety function

If the window glass encounters resistance above the middle of the window during automatic closing, it is immediately stopped and opened again.



### Override safety function

In the event of closing difficulties due to frost or the like, switch on the ignition, then pull the switch to the first detent and hold. The window moves up without safety function enabled. To stop movement, release the switch.



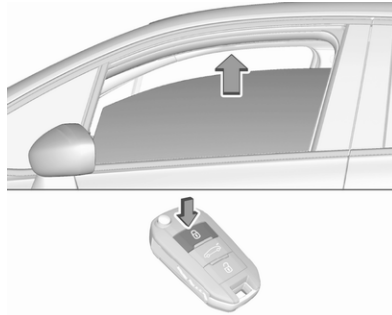
## Child safety system for rear windows




Press  to deactivate rear door power windows; the LED illuminates. To activate, press  again.

## Operating windows from outside

The windows can be operated remotely from outside the vehicle.



Press and hold  to close windows. Release button to stop window movement.

If the windows are fully closed, the hazard warning lights will flash twice.

## Overload

If the windows are repeatedly operated within short intervals, the window operation is disabled for some time.

## Initialising the power windows

If the windows cannot be closed automatically (e.g. after disconnecting the vehicle battery), a warning message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

Vehicle messages ⇨ 82.


Activate the window electronics as follows:

1. Close doors.
2. Switch on ignition.
3. Pull switch until the window is closed and keep pulling for additional two seconds.
4. Push switch until the window is completely open and keep pushing for additional two seconds.
5. Repeat for each window.

## Heated rear window

Operated by pressing .


The heating switches off automatically after a certain time depending on the outside temperature.

Depending on climate control system,  is located at a different position.




Heated exterior mirrors ⇨ 20.

## Heated windscreen

Operated by pressing . LED in button illuminates.

The heating works only with freezing outside temperatures and switches off automatically after a certain time depending on the outside temperature.

Depending on climate control system,  is located at a different position.



## Sun visors

The sun visors can be folded down or swivelled to the side to prevent dazzling.

If the sun visors have integral mirrors, the mirror covers should be closed when driving.

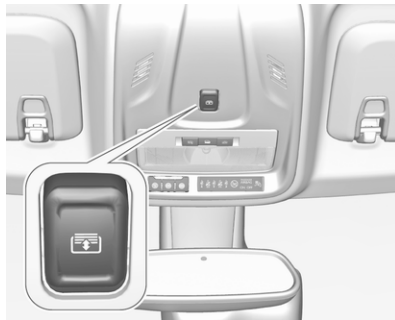
A ticket holder is located on the backside of the sun visor.


## Roof


### Glass panel


### Sunblind


The sunblind is electrically operated.



Press  gently to the first detent at the rear: the sunblind is opened as long as the switch is operated.

Press  firmly to the second detent and then release at the rear: the sunblind is completely opened.

Press  gently to the first detent at the front: the sunblind is closed as long as the switch is operated.



Press  firmly to the second detent and then release at the front: the sunblind is completely closed.

### Safety function



If the sunblind encounters resistance during automatic closing, it is immediately stopped and opened again.

### Initialising after a power failure


After a power failure, it may only be possible to operate the sunblind to a limited extent. Initialise the system as follows:

1. Switch on ignition.
2. Press  twice gently to the first detent at the rear, the sunblind opens slightly.
3. Immediately press  twice gently to the first detent at the front, the sunblind closes slightly.

After step 3 the sunblind is in initialising mode without safety function.

4. Press  gently to the first detent at the rear until the sunblind is completely opened.
5. Press  gently to the first detent at the front until the sunblind is completely closed.

After this procedure, the sunblind is initialised with safety function activated.

When  is pressed firmly to the second detent during initialising, the procedure is cancelled.

## Seats, restraints

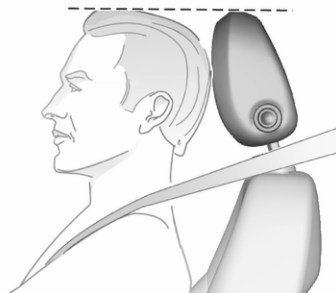
<b>Head restraints</b> .....	<b>26</b>
<b>Front seats</b> .....	<b>27</b>
Seat position .....	27
Seat adjustment .....	28
Armrest .....	30
Heating .....	30
<b>Rear seats</b> .....	<b>31</b>
Armrest .....	32
<b>Seat belts</b> .....	<b>32</b>
Three-point seat belt .....	33
<b>Airbag system</b> .....	<b>35</b>
Front airbag system .....	38
Side airbag system .....	39
Curtain airbag system .....	40
Airbag deactivation .....	40
<b>Child restraints</b> .....	<b>41</b>
Child restraint systems .....	41
Child restraint installation locations .....	45

## Head restraints

### Position

#### ⚠ Warning

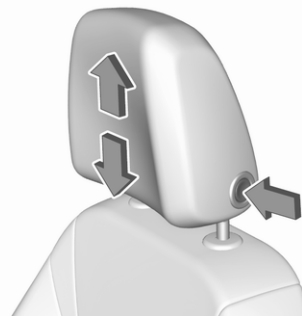
Only drive with the head restraint set to the proper position.



The upper edge of the head restraint should be at upper head level. If this is not possible for extremely tall people, set to highest position, and set to lowest position for small people.

## Head restraints on front seats

### Height adjustment



Press release button, adjust height, engage.

## Head restraints on rear seats

### Height adjustment



Pull the head restraint upwards or press the catch to release and push the head restraint downwards.

### Removal of rear head restraint

E.g. when using a child restraint system ↗ 41.

Pull the head restraint upwards, press the catch to release and pull the head restraint out.

## Front seats

### Seat position

#### ⚠ Danger

Do not sit closer than 25 cm to the steering wheel, to permit safe airbag deployment.

#### ⚠ Warning

Only drive with the seat correctly adjusted.

#### ⚠ Warning

Never adjust seats while driving as they could move uncontrollably.

#### ⚠ Warning

Never store any objects under the seats.



- Sit with buttocks as far back against the backrest as possible. Adjust the distance between the seat and the pedals so that legs are slightly angled when fully pressing the pedals. Slide the front passenger seat as far back as possible.
- Set seat height high enough to have a clear field of vision on all sides and on instrument cluster. There should be at least one hand of clearance between head and the roof frame. Thighs should rest lightly on the seat without pressing into it.

- Sit with shoulders as far back against the backrest as possible. Set the backrest rake so that it is possible to easily reach the steering wheel with arms slightly bent. Maintain contact between shoulders and the backrest when turning the steering wheel. Do not angle the backrest too far back. We recommend a maximum rake of approx. 25°.
- Adjust seat and steering wheel in a way that the wrist rests on top of the steering wheel while the arm is fully extended and shoulders are on the backrest.
- Adjust the steering wheel ↻ 58.
- Adjust the head restraint ↻ 26.
- Adjust the thigh support so that there is a space approx. two fingers wide between the edge of the seat and the hollow of the knee.
- Adjust the lumbar support so that it supports the natural shape of the spine.

## Seat adjustment

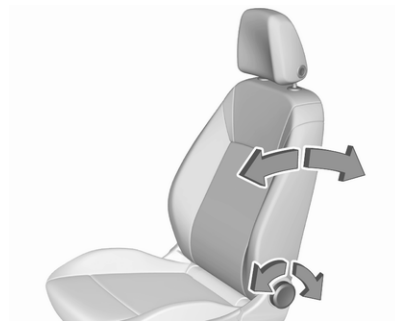
Drive only with engaged seats and backrests.

### Longitudinal adjustment



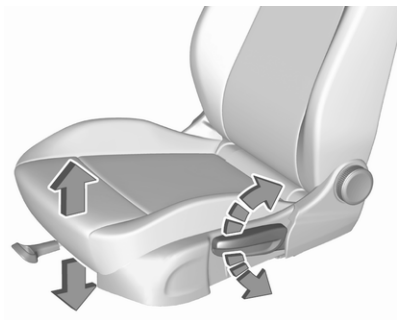
Pull handle, slide seat, release handle. Try to move the seat back and forth to ensure that the seat is locked in place.

### Backrest inclination



Turn handwheel. Do not lean on backrest when adjusting.

### Seat height



Lever pumping motion

up : seat higher  
down : seat lower

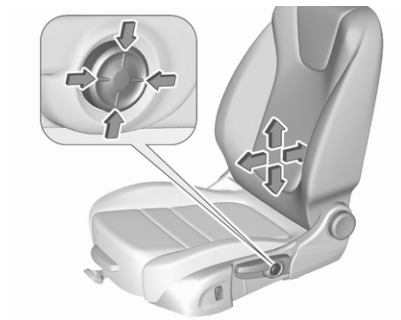
### Seat inclination



Press switch

top : front end higher  
bottom : front end lower

### Lumbar support

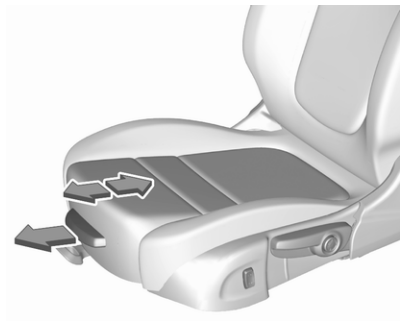


Adjust lumbar support using the four-way switch to suit personal requirements.

Moving support up and down: push switch up or down.

Increasing and decreasing support: push switch forwards or backwards.

### Adjustable thigh support



Pull the lever and slide the thigh support.


### Armrest



Armrest can be folded up.

### Heating



Adjust heating to the desired setting by pressing  for the respective seat one or more times. The control indicator in the button indicates the setting.

The heating works only when the outside temperature is below 20 °C. Prolonged use of the highest setting for people with sensitive skin is not recommended.

Seat heating is operational when engine is running.

During an Autostop, seat heating is also operational.



Stop-start system ⇨ 175.

## Rear seats

Drive only with engaged seats and backrests.

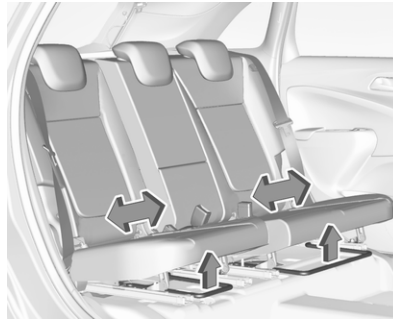
### ⚠ Warning

Never adjust seats while driving as they could move uncontrollably.

Folding backrests ⇨ 48.

### Longitudinal adjustment

Both parts of the rear seat can be individually moved forwards or backwards.



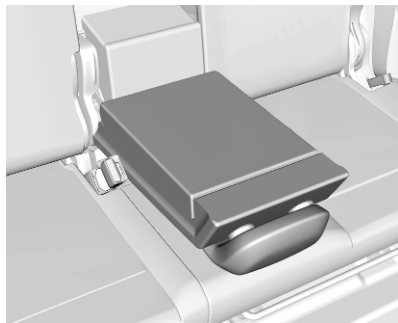
Pull handle, slide seat, release handle. Try to move the seat back and forth to ensure that the seat is locked in place.

### Backrest inclination



Pull the loop, adjust inclination and release loop. Do not lean on backrest when adjusting.

## Armrest



Folding down armrest ⇨ 48.

## Seat belts



The seat belts are locked during heavy acceleration or deceleration of the vehicle, holding the occupants in the seat position. Therefore the risk of injury is considerably reduced.

### **⚠ Warning**

Fasten seat belt before each trip.  
In the event of an accident, people not wearing seat belts endanger their fellow occupants and themselves.

Seat belts are designed to be used by only one person at a time.

Child restraint system ⇨ 41.

Periodically check all parts of the seat belt system for damage, soiling and proper functionality.

Have damaged components replaced. After an accident, have the seat belts and triggered seat belt pretensioners replaced by a workshop.


### **Notice**

Make sure that the seat belts are neither damaged by shoes or sharp-edged objects nor trapped. Prevent dirt from getting into the seat belt retractors.

### **Notice**

Use the belt buckle intended for the respective seat belt when fastening in order to ensure proper functionality.

### **Seat belt reminder**

Each seat is equipped with a seat belt reminder, indicated by a control indicator  for the respective seat in the overhead console .

Seat belt reminder ⇨ 70.

### Belt force limiters

Stress on the body is reduced by the gradual release of the seat belt during a collision.

### Belt pretensioners

In the event of a head-on, rear-end or side-on collision of a certain severity, the front seat belts and the outer rear seat belts are tightened by seat belt pretensioners.

#### ⚠ Warning

Incorrect handling (e.g. removal or fitting of seat belts) can trigger the belt pretensioners.

The deployment of the belt pretensioners is indicated by continuous illumination of the control indicator 🚨.

Airbag and belt pretensioners ⇨ 70.

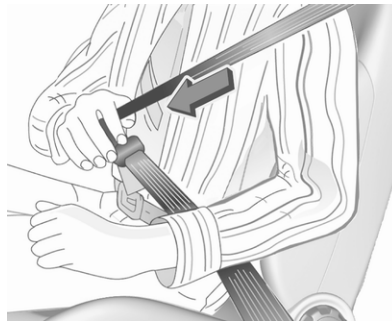
Triggered belt pretensioners must be replaced by a workshop. Belt pretensioners can only be triggered once.

### Notice

Do not affix or install accessories or other objects that may interfere with the operation of the belt pretensioners. Do not make any modifications to belt pretensioner components as this will invalidate the vehicle operating permit.

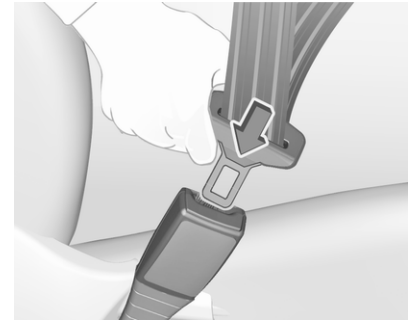
### Three-point seat belt

#### Fasten



Withdraw the seat belt from the retractor, guide it untwisted across the body and insert the latch plate into

the buckle. Make sure the seat belt lies across the shoulder and fits tightly to the body while driving.



Loose or bulky clothing prevents the seat belt from fitting snugly. Do not place objects such as handbags or mobile phones between the seat belt and your body.

#### ⚠ Warning

The seat belt must not rest against hard or fragile objects in the pockets of your clothing.

Seat belt reminder 🚨 ⇨ 70.

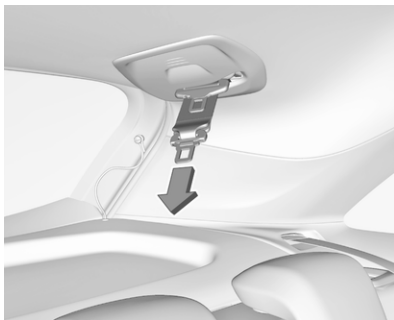
## Unfasten



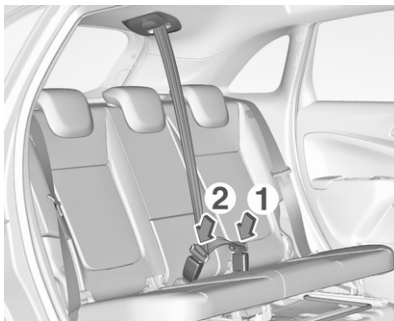
To release seat belt, press red button on seat belt buckle and guide the seat belt back.

## Centre seat belt of the second seat row

The centre seat is equipped with a particular three-point seat belt.



Pull latch plates with the seat belt out of seat belt holder in the roof.



Insert lower latch plate into left-hand buckle (1) at the centre seat. Guide the upper latch plate with the seat belt over the lap area and the shoulder (do not twist) and insert it into right-hand buckle (2) at centre seat.

To unfasten the seat belt, first press the button on the right-hand buckle (2) and remove upper latch plate. Then press the button on the left-hand buckle (1) and remove lower latch plate. The seat belt retracts automatically.

## Using the seat belt while pregnant



**⚠ Warning**

The lap seat belt must be positioned as low as possible across the pelvis to prevent pressure on the abdomen.

**Airbag system**

The airbag system consists of a number of individual systems depending on the scope of equipment.

When triggered, the airbags inflate within milliseconds. They also deflate so quickly that it is often unnoticeable during the collision.

**⚠ Warning**

The airbag system deploys in an explosive manner, repairs must be performed by skilled personnel only.

**⚠ Warning**

Adding accessories that change the vehicle's frame, bumper system, height, front end or side sheet metal, may keep the airbag system from working properly. The operation of the airbag system can also be affected by changing any parts of the front seats, seat belts,

airbag sensing and diagnostic module, steering wheel, instrument panel, inner door seals including the speakers, any of the airbag modules, ceiling or pillar trim, front sensors, side impact sensors or airbag wiring.

**⚠ Warning**

Keep the area in which the airbag inflates clear of obstructions.

**Notice**

The airbag systems and belt pretensioner control electronics are located in the centre console. Do not put any magnetic objects in this area.

Do not affix any objects onto the airbag covers and do not cover them with other materials. Have damaged covers replaced by a workshop.

Each airbag is triggered only once. Have deployed airbags replaced by a workshop. Furthermore, it may be necessary to have the steering

wheel, the instrument panel, parts of the panelling, the door seals, handles and the seats replaced.

Do not make any modifications to the airbag system as this will invalidate the vehicle operating permit.

Control indicator  for airbag systems  
 ⇨ 70.

### Child restraint systems on front passenger seat with airbag systems



**EN:** NEVER use a rearward-facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it; DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.

**DE:** Nach hinten gerichtete Kindersitze NIEMALS auf einem Sitz verwenden, der durch einen davor befindlichen AKTIVEN AIRBAG geschützt ist, da dies den TOD oder SCHWERE VERLETZUNGEN DES KINDES zur Folge haben kann.

**FR:** NE JAMAIS utiliser un siège d'enfant orienté vers l'arrière sur un siège protégé par un COUSSIN GONFLABLE ACTIF placé devant lui, sous peine d'infliger des BLESSURES GRAVES, voire MORTELLES à l'ENFANT.

**ES:** NUNCA utilice un sistema de retención infantil orientado hacia atrás en un asiento protegido por un AIRBAG FRONTAL ACTIVO. Peligro de MUERTE o LESIONES GRAVES para el NIÑO.

**RU:** ЗАПРЕЩАЕТСЯ устанавливать детское удерживающее устройство лицом назад на сиденье автомобиля,

оборудованном фронтальной подушкой безопасности, если ПОДУШКА НЕ ОТКЛЮЧЕНА! Это может привести к СМЕРТИ или СЕРЬЕЗНЫМ ТРАВМАМ РЕБЕНКА.

**NL:** Gebruik NOOIT een achterwaarts gericht kinderzitje op een stoel met een ACTIEVE AIRBAG ervoor, om DODELIJK of ERNSTIG LETSEL van het KIND te voorkomen.

**DA:** Brug ALDRIG en bagudvendt autostol på et forsæde med AKTIV AIRBAG, BARNET kan komme i LIVSFARE eller komme ALVORLIGT TIL SKADE.

**SV:** Använd ALDRIG en bakåtvänd barnstol på ett säte som skyddas med en framförvarande AKTIV AIRBAG. DÖDSFALL eller ALLVARLIGA SKADOR kan drabba BARNET.

**FI:** ÄLÄ KOSKAAN sijoita taaksepäin suunnattua lasten turvaistuinta istuimelle, jonka edessä on AKTIIVINEN TURVATYYNY, LAPSI VOI KUOLLA tai VAMMAUTUA VAKAVASTI.

**NO:** Bakovervendt barnesikringsutstyr må ALDRI brukes på et sete med AKTIV KOLLISJONSPUTE foran, da det kan føre til at BARNET utsettes for LIVSFARE og fare for ALVORLIGE SKADER.

**PT:** NUNCA use um sistema de retenção para crianças voltado para trás num banco protegido com um AIRBAG ACTIVO na frente do mesmo, poderá ocorrer a PERDA DE VIDA ou FERIMENTOS GRAVES na CRIANÇA.

**IT:** Non usare mai un sistema di sicurezza per bambini rivolto all'indietro su un sedile protetto da AIRBAG ATTIVO di fronte ad esso: pericolo di MORTE o LESIONI GRAVI per il BAMBINO!

**EL:** ΠΟΤΕ μη χρησιμοποιείτε παιδικό κάθισμα ασφαλείας με φορά προς τα πίσω σε κάθισμα που προστατεύεται από μετωπικό ΕΝΕΡΓΟ ΑΕΡΟΣΑΚΟ, διότι το παιδί μπορεί να υποστεί ΘΑΝΑΣΙΜΟ ή ΣΟΒΑΡΟ ΤΡΑΥΜΑΤΙΣΜΟ.

**PL:** NIE WOLNO montować fotelika dziecięcego zwróconego tyłem do kierunku jazdy na fotelu, przed którym znajduje się WŁĄCZONA PODUSZKA POWIETRZNA. Niezastosowanie się do tego zalecenia może być przyczyną ŚMIERCI lub POWAŻNYCH OBRAŻEŃ u DZIECKA.

**TR:** Arkaya bakan bir çocuk emniyet sistemini KESİNLİKLE önünde bir AKTİF HAVA YASTIĞI ile korumakta olan bir koltukta kullanmayınız. ÇOCUK ÖLEBİLİR veya AĞIR ŞEKİLDE YARALANABİLİR.

**UK:** НИКОЛИ не використовуйте систему безпеки для дітей, що встановлюється обличчям назад, на сидінні з УВІМКНЕНОЮ ПОДУШКОЮ БЕЗПЕКИ, інакше це може призвести до СМЕРТІ чи СЕРІОЗНОГО ТРАВМУВАННЯ ДИТИНИ.

**HU:** SOHA ne használjon hátrafelé néző biztonsági gyerekülést előlről AKTÍV LÉGZSÁKKAL védett ülésen, mert a GYERMEK HALÁLÁT vagy KOMOLY SÉRÜLÉSÉT okozhatja.

**HR:** NIKADA nemojte koristiti sustav zadržavanja za djecu okrenut prema natrag na sjedalu s AKTIVNIM ZRAČNIM JASTUKOM ispred njega, to bi moglo dovesti do SMRTI ili OZBILJNJIH OZLJEDA za DIJETE.

**SL:** NIKOLI ne nameščajte otroškega varnostnega sedeža, obrnjenega v nasprotni smeri vožnje, na sedež z AKTIVNO ČELNO ZRAČNO BLAZINO, saj pri tem obstaja nevarnost RESNIH ali SMRTNIH POŠKODB za OTROKA.

**SR:** NIKADA ne koristiti bezbednosni sistem za decu u kome su deca okrenuta unazad na sedištu sa AKTIVNIM VAZDUŠNIM JASTUKOM ispred sedišta zato što DETE može da NASTRADA ili da se TEŠKO POVREDI.

**MK:** НИКОГАШ не користете детско седиште свртено наназад на седиште заштитено со АКТИВНО ВОЗДУШНО ПЕРНИЧЕ пред него, затоа што детето може ДА ЗАГИНЕ или да биде ТЕШКО ПОВРЕДЕНО.

**BG:** НИКОГА не използвайте детска седалка, гледаща назад, върху седалка, която е защитена

чрез АКТИВНА ВЪЗДУШНА ВЪЗГЛАВНИЦА пред нея - може да се стигне до СМЪРТ или СЕРИОЗНО НАРАНЯВАНЕ на ДЕТЕТО.

**RO:** Nu utilizați NICIODATĂ un scaun pentru copil îndreptat spre partea din spate a mașinii pe un scaun protejat de un AIRBAG ACTIV în fața sa; acest lucru poate duce la DECESUL sau VĂTĂMAREA GRAVĂ a COPILULUI.

**CS:** NIKDY nepoužívejte dětský zádržný systém instalovaný proti směru jízdy na sedadle, které je chráněno před sedadlem AKTIVNÍM AIRBAGEM. Mohlo by dojít k VÁŽNÉMU PORANĚNÍ nebo ÚMRTÍ DÍTĚTE.

**SK:** NIKDY nepoužívajte detskú sedačku otočenú vzad na sedadle chránenom AKTÍVNÝM AIRBAGOM, pretože môže dôjsť k SMRTI alebo VÁŽNÝM ZRANENIAM DIEŤAŤA.

**LT:** JOKIU BŪDU nemontuokite atgal atgręžtos vaiko tvirtinimo sistemas sėdynėje, prieš kurią įrengta AKTYVI ORO PAGALVĖ, nes VAIKAS GALI ŽŪTI arba RIMTAI SUSIŽALOTI.

**LV:** NEKĀDĀ GADĪJUMĀ neizmantojiet uz aizmuguri vērstu bērnu sēdekļiņi sēdvietā, kas tiek aizsargāta ar tās priekšā uzstādītu AKTĪVU DROŠĪBAS SPILVENU, jo pretējā gadījumā BĒRNS var gūt SMAGAS TRAUMAS vai IET BOJĀ.

**ET:** ÄRGE kasutage tahapoole suunatud lapseturvaistet istmel, mille ees on AKTIIVSE TURVAPADJAGA kaitstud iste, sest see võib põhjustada LAPSE SURMA või TÕSISE VIGASTUSE.

**MT:** QATT tuża trażżin għat-tfal li jħares lejn in-naħa ta' wara fuq sit protett b' AIRBAG ATTIV quddiemu; dan jista' jikkawża l-MEWT jew ĠRIEĦI SERJI lit-TFAL.

**GA:** Ná húsáid srian sábháilteachta linbh cúil RIAMH ar shuíochán a bhfuil mála aeir ag feidhmiú os a chomhair. Tá baol BÁIS nó GORTÚ DONA don PHÁISTE ag baint leis.

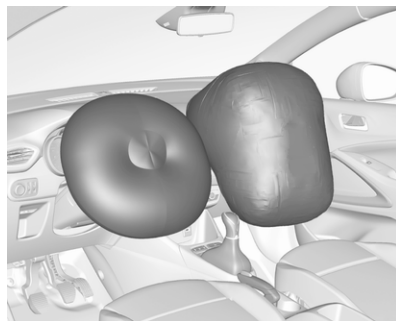
Additionally, for safety reasons a forward-facing child restraint system must only be used subject to the instructions and restrictions in the table ⇨ 45.

The airbag label is located on both sides of the front passenger sun visor. Airbag deactivation ⇨ 40.

## Front airbag system

The front airbag system consists of one airbag in the steering wheel and one in the instrument panel on the front passenger side. These can be identified by the word **AIRBAG**.

The front airbag system is triggered in the event of a front-end impact of a certain severity. The ignition must be switched on.





The inflated airbags cushion the impact, thereby reducing the risk of injury to the upper body and head of the front seat occupants considerably.

### **⚠ Warning**

Optimum protection is only provided when the seat is in the proper position.

Seat position ⇨ 27.

Keep the area in which the airbag inflates clear of obstructions.

Fit the seat belt correctly and engage securely. Only then is the airbag able to protect.

## Side airbag system



The side airbag system consists of an airbag in each front seat backrest. This can be identified by the word **AIRBAG**.

The side airbag system is triggered in the event of a side impact of a certain severity. The ignition must be switched on.



The inflated airbags cushion the impact, thereby reducing the risk of injury to the upper body and pelvis in the event of a side-on collision considerably.

### **⚠ Warning**

Keep the area in which the airbag inflates clear of obstructions.

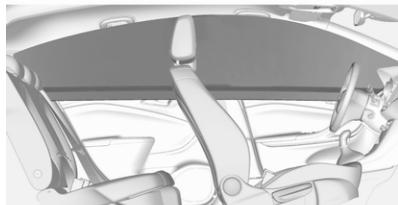
### **Notice**

Only use protective seat covers that have been approved for the vehicle. Be careful not to cover the airbags.

## Curtain airbag system

The curtain airbag system consists of an airbag in the roof frame on each side. This can be identified by the word **AIRBAG** on the roof pillars.

The curtain airbag system is triggered in the event of a side-on impact of a certain severity. The ignition must be switched on.



The inflated airbags cushion the impact, thereby reducing the risk of injury to the head in the event of a side-on impact considerably.

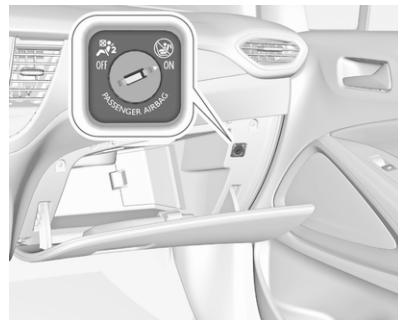
### ⚠ Warning

Keep the area in which the airbag inflates clear of obstructions.

The hooks on the handles in the roof frame are only suitable for hanging up light articles of clothing, without coat hangers. Do not keep any items in these clothes.

## Airbag deactivation

The front passenger airbag system must be deactivated for child restraint system on the passenger seat according to the instructions in the table ↪ 45. The side airbag and curtain airbag systems, the belt pretensioners and all driver airbag systems will remain active.



The front passenger airbag system can be deactivated via a key-operated switch on the passenger side in the glovebox.

Use the ignition key to choose the position:

- OFF : front passenger airbag is deactivated and will not inflate in the event of a collision. Control indicator OFF illuminates continuously in the centre console
- ON : front passenger airbag is active

**⚠ Danger**

Deactivate passenger airbag only in combination with the use of a child restraint system, subject to the instructions and restrictions in the table ↗ 45.

Otherwise, there is a risk of fatal injury for a person occupying a seat with a deactivated front passenger airbag.



If the control indicator **ON** illuminates for approx. 60 seconds after the ignition is switched on, the front passenger airbag system will inflate in the event of a collision.

If the control indicator **OFF** illuminates after the ignition is switched on, the front passenger airbag system is deactivated. It stays on while the airbag is deactivated.

If both control indicators are illuminated at the same time, there is a system failure. The status of the system is not discernible, therefore no person is allowed to occupy the front passenger seat. Contact a workshop immediately.

Consult a workshop immediately if neither of the two control indicators are illuminated.

Change status only when the vehicle is stopped with the ignition off.

Control indicator for airbag deactivation ↗ 70.

**Child restraints****Child restraint systems****⚠ Danger**

Make sure that children below sufficient size and weight are protected using a suitable child restraint system. Never place a child on the lap.

**⚠ Danger**

If using a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat, the airbag system for the front passenger seat must be deactivated. This also applies to certain forward-facing child restraint systems as indicated in the tables ↗ 45.

Airbag deactivation ↗ 40.

Airbag label ↗ 35.

We recommend a child restraint system which is tailored specifically to the vehicle. For further information, contact your workshop.

In case of any interference of the child restraint system with vehicle seat head restraint, adjust or remove the corresponding head restraint ↗ 26.

When a child restraint system is being used, pay attention to the following usage and installation instructions and also those supplied with the child restraint system. The given restrictions in the table refer to a test body, which is the maximum envelope of all existing child restraint systems. Make sure that the front seats do not interfere with the used child restraint system.

Always comply with local or national regulations. In some countries, the use of child restraint systems is forbidden on certain seats.

Only drive with the driver seat correctly adjusted ↗ 27.

Child restraint systems can be fastened with:

- Three-point seat belt
- ISOFIX brackets
- Top-tether anchor

### Three-point seat belt

Child restraint systems can be fastened by using a three-point seat belt. After fastening the child restraint system the seat belt has to be tightened ↗ 45.

### ISOFIX brackets



Fasten vehicle-approved ISOFIX child restraint systems to the ISOFIX brackets. Specific vehicle ISOFIX child restraint system positions are marked in the ISOFIX table ↗ 45.

ISOFIX brackets are indicated by a label on the backrest. To get access to the ISOFIX brackets, first pull the zipper.

An i-Size child restraint system is an universal ISOFIX child restraint system according UN Regulation No. 129.


All i-Size child restraint systems can be used on any vehicle seat suitable for i-Size, i-Size table ↗ 45.

Either a Top-tether strap or a support leg must be used in addition to the ISOFIX brackets.



i-Size child seats and vehicle seats with i-Size approval are marked with i-Size symbol, see illustration.

## Top-tether anchors

Top-tether anchors are marked with the symbol  for a child seat.



In addition to the ISOFIX brackets, fasten the Top-tether strap to the Top-tether anchors.

ISOFIX child restraint systems of universal category positions are marked in the table by IUF ⇨ 45.

## Selecting the right system

The rear seats are the most convenient location to fasten a child restraint system.

Children should travel facing rearwards in the vehicle as long as possible. This makes sure that the child's backbone, which is still very weak, is under less strain in the event of an accident. Do not use forward facing child restraint system at all seats when child's weight is below 13 kg.

Suitable are child restraint systems that comply with valid UN ECE regulations. Check local laws and regulations for mandatory use of child restraint systems.

The following child restraints are recommended for the following weight classes:

- **Group 0, Group 0+:** Maxi Cosi Cabriofix with or without ISOFIX base for children up to 13 kg
- **Group I:** Duo Plus with ISOFIX and Top-tether for children from 9 kg to 18 kg

- **Group II, Group III:** Kidfix XP with or without ISOFIX for children from 15 kg to 36 kg
- **Group III:** Graco Booster for children from 22 kg to 36 kg

Ensure that the child restraint system to be installed is compatible with the vehicle type.

Child seat at the front: Adjust the front passenger seat to the highest and fully back longitudinal position with the backrest straightened.

Child seat at the rear: Move the vehicle's front seat forward and straighten the backrest so that the legs of the child in the forward facing or the rearward facing child seat do not touch the vehicle's front seat.

Follow the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions to install the corresponding child restraint system in the vehicle.

For semi-universal or vehicle specific child restraint system (ISOFIX or belted child restraint system), see the vehicle list provided in the user manual of the child restraint system.

Ensure that the mounting location of the child restraint system within the vehicle is correct, see following table.

Allow children to enter and exit the vehicle only on the side facing away from the traffic.

When the child restraint system is not in use, secure the seat with a seat belt or remove it from the vehicle.

**Notice**

Do not affix anything on the child restraint systems and do not cover them with any other materials.

A child restraint system which has been subjected to stress in an accident must be replaced.

## Child restraint installation locations

### Installation of universal, ISOFIX and i-Size child seats

As required by European regulations, this table gives the options for installing child seats secured using the seat belt and universally approved as well as the larger ISOFIX and i-Size child seats on seat positions equipped with ISOFIX mountings in the vehicle.

Yes : Suitable for fitment of the designated category of the child restraint system.

No : Not suitable for fitment of the designated category of the child restraint system.

	Front passenger seat	Rear outer seats	Rear centre seat
<b>Position compatible with a universal child seat <sup>1)</sup></b>	Yes <sup>2) 3) 4)</sup> Yes <sup>3) 5) 6)</sup>	Yes <sup>7) 8)</sup>	No
<b>Position compatible with an i-Size child seat</b>	No <sup>9)</sup>	Yes	No <sup>9)</sup>
<b>Position equipped with a top-tether fixing</b>	No <sup>9)</sup>	Yes	No <sup>9)</sup>
<b>Carrycot type of child seat</b>	No <sup>9)</sup>	No	No <sup>9)</sup>
<b>Rearward facing ISOFIX child seat</b>	No <sup>9)</sup>	R3 <sup>7) 8)</sup>	No <sup>9)</sup>
<b>Forward facing ISOFIX child seat</b>	No <sup>9)</sup>	F3 <sup>7) 8)</sup>	No <sup>9)</sup>
<b>Booster child seat</b>	B3 <sup>9)</sup>	B3 <sup>10)</sup>	B3 <sup>9)</sup>

1) Universal child seat: child seat that can be installed in all vehicles using the seat belt.

2) To install a "rearward facing" child seat at this seat position, the front passenger's airbag must be deactivated "OFF".

3) For a seat with height adjustment, set it to the maximum height.

4) For universal child seat : groups 0, 0+, I

5) Only a "forward facing" child seat is authorised at this seat position with the front passenger's airbag activated "ON".

6) For universal child seat: groups II and III only

- 7) Move the respective front seat ahead of the child restraint system forwards and the sliding rear seat backwards as far as necessary.
- 8) Adjust the respective headrest as necessary or remove if required.
- 9) Seats not fitted with ISOFIX compliant mountings.
- 10) Remove the headrest.

**Rules:**

- A position that is i-Size compatible is also compatible for R1, R2 and F2X, F2, B2.
- A position that is R3 compatible is also compatible for R1, R2 and R2X.
- A position that is R2 compatible is also compatible for R1.
- A position that is F3 compatible is also compatible for F2X and F2.
- A position that is B3 compatible is also compatible for B2.

**Size of child restraint fixture (1, 2, 3):**

- R1 means rearward facing child restraint fixture for mass group 0 up to 10 kg and mass group 0+ up to 13 kg, age around 0-1 year.
- R2 means reduced size of rearward facing child restraint fixture for mass group 0+ up to 13 kg and mass group 1 from 9 to 18 kg, age around 2-4 years.
- R3 means full size of rearward facing child restraint fixture for mass group 0+ up to 13 kg and mass group 1 from 9 to 18 kg, age around 2-4 years.
- F2, F2X mean reduced height of forward facing child restraint fixture for mass group 1 from 9 to 18 kg, age around 6-7 years.
- F3 means full height of forward facing child restraint fixture for mass group 1 from 9 to 18 kg, age around 7-10 years.



## Storage

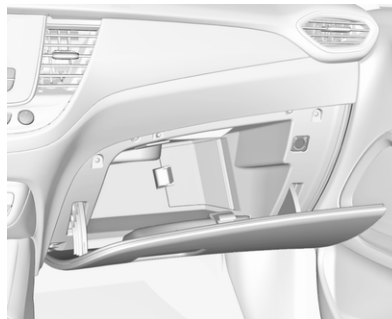
<b>Storage compartments</b> .....	<b>47</b>
Glovebox .....	47
Cupholders .....	47
Centre console storage .....	47
<b>Load compartment</b> .....	<b>48</b>
Load compartment cover .....	50
Rear floor storage cover .....	51
Lashing eyes .....	52
Warning triangle .....	52
First aid kit .....	52
<b>Roof rack system</b> .....	<b>53</b>
Roof rack .....	53
<b>Loading information</b> .....	<b>54</b>

## Storage compartments

### ⚠ Warning

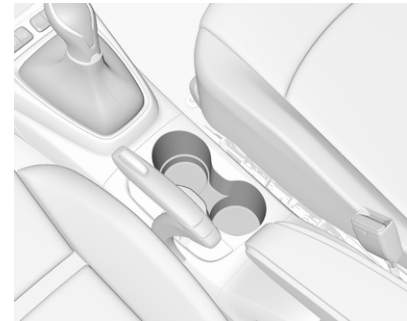
Do not store heavy or sharp objects in the storage compartments.

## Glovebox



The glovebox should be closed whilst driving.

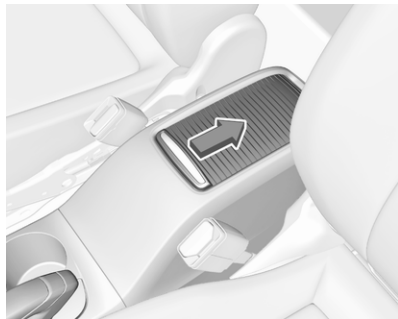
## Cupholders



Cupholders are located in the centre console.

## Centre console storage

The storage container can be used to store small items.



Depending on the version, the storage compartment is located under a cover.

## Load compartment

The rear seat backrest is divided in two parts. Both parts can be folded down.

### Warning

When folding up, ensure that backrests are securely locked in position before driving. Failure to do so may result in personal injury or damage to the load or vehicle in the event of hard braking or a collision.

Before folding rear seat backrests, execute the following if necessary:

- Remove the load compartment cover ⇨ 50.
- Press and hold the catch to push the head restraints down ⇨ 26.



- Insert the seat belts in the guiding latches.

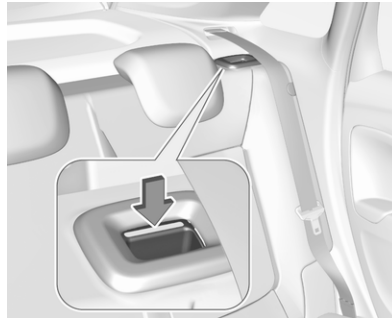
Load compartment cover ⇨ 50.

Head restraints ⇨ 26.

### Load compartment extension (version with lever)



- Pull the release lever on one or both outer sides and fold down the backrests onto the seat cushion.
- To fold up, raise the backrests and guide them into an upright position until they engage audibly.



The backrests are properly engaged when the red mark near the release lever is no longer visible.

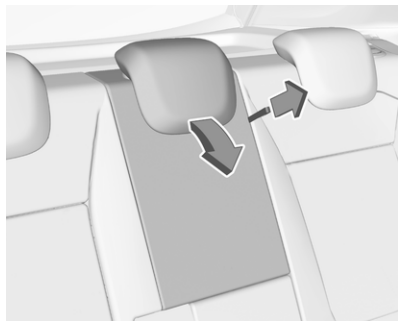
### Load compartment extension (version with loop)

- Move both rear seats to the most rearward position ⇨ 31.
- Fold up rear armrest before folding down the relevant part of the backrest. Otherwise this part of the backrest cannot be folded down.

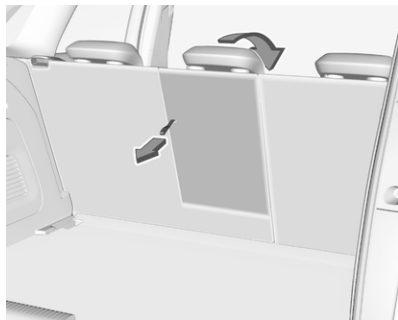


- Pull the loop and fold down the backrest onto the seat cushion.
- To fold up, raise the backrests and guide them into an upright position until they engage audibly.

### Folding rear armrest



Pull the loop to fold down the rear armrest.



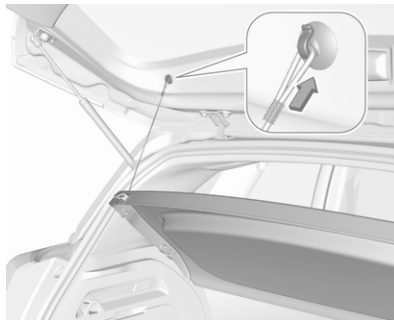
The armrest can also be folded down from the load compartment by pulling the loop and pushing the centre backrest.

The centre backrest is properly engaged when the red mark on the loop is no longer visible.

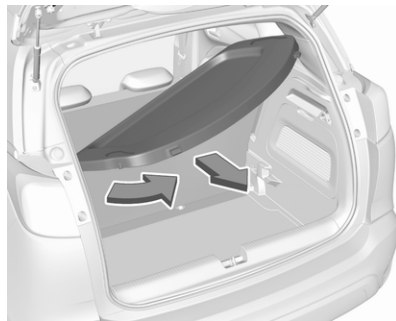
### Load compartment cover

Do not place any objects on the cover.

#### Removing cover

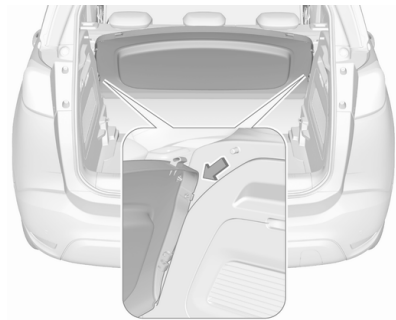


Unhook retaining straps from tailgate.



Lift cover, slightly angle and turn it. Remove the cover.

#### Stowing



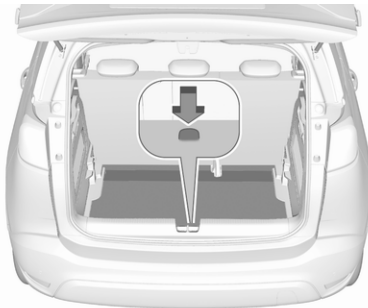
The load compartment cover can be stored behind the rear seat backrests.

Unhook retaining straps and lift the cover backwards until it unlatches. Then slide it down in the guides behind the seat backrests.

### Fitting cover

Engage cover in side guides and fold downwards. Attach the retaining straps to the tailgate.

### Rear floor storage cover



Raise cover at the recess to gain access to emergency breakdown equipment.

Tyre repair kit ↻ 253.

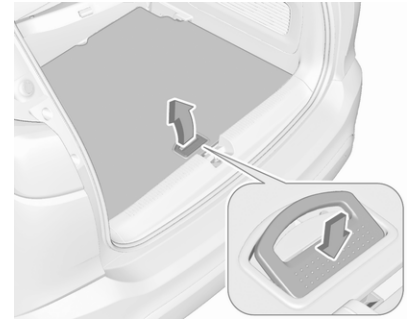
Spare wheel ↻ 258.

### Double load floor

The double load floor can be inserted in the load compartment in two positions:



- lower position above the rear floor storage cover
- upper position interlocked with the grab handle into back panel trim



To remove, press the handle to unlock the load floor and lift it up while using the handle.

If mounted in the upper position, the space between the load floor and the spare wheel well cover can be used as a storage compartment.

In this position, if the rear seat backrests are folded forwards, an almost completely flat load bay is created.

In the upper position, the double load floor is able to withstand a maximum load of 100 kg. In the lower position, the double load floor is able to withstand the maximum permissible load.

## Lashing eyes



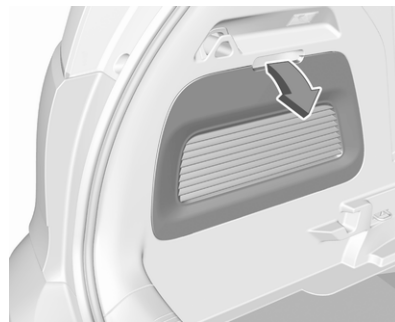
The lashing eyes are designed to secure items against slippage, e.g. using lashing straps or luggage net.

## Warning triangle



Stow the warning triangle in the space at the rear of the load compartment and secure it with the Velcro® fastener.

## First aid kit



Fold down the cover on the left side of the load compartment.



Stow the first aid kit in the storage compartment.

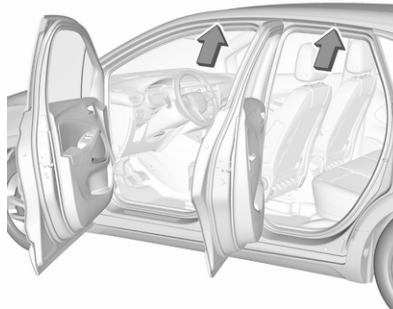
## Roof rack system

### Roof rack

For safety reasons and to avoid damage to the roof, the vehicle-approved roof rack system is recommended.

Follow the installation instructions and remove the roof rack when not in use.

### Mounting roof rack



Open all doors.

Mounting points are located in each door frame of the vehicle body.

Detach the cover from each mounting point and fasten the roof rack with the attached screws.

## Loading information

### ⚠ Warning

Always make sure that the load in the vehicle is securely stowed. Otherwise objects can be thrown around inside the vehicle and cause personal injury or damage to the load or car.



- Heavy objects in the load compartment should be placed against the seat backrests. Make sure that the backrests are

securely engaged ⇨ 48. If objects can be stacked, heavier objects should be placed at the bottom.

- Prevent sliding of loose objects by securing them with straps attached to the lashing eyes ⇨ 52.
- Do not allow the load to protrude above the upper edge of the backrests.
- Do not place any objects on the load compartment cover or the instrument panel, and do not cover the sensor on top of the instrument panel.
- The load must not obstruct the operation of the pedals, parking brake and gear selector, or hinder the freedom of movement of the driver. Do not place any unsecured objects in the interior.
- Do not drive with an open load compartment.
- The payload is the difference between the permitted gross vehicle weight (see identification plate ⇨ 275) and the EC kerb weight.

To calculate the payload, enter the data for your vehicle in the weights table at the front of this manual.

The EC kerb weight includes weights for the driver (68 kg), luggage (7 kg) and all fluids (fuel tank 90% full).

Optional equipment and accessories increase the kerb weight.

- Driving with a roof load increases the sensitivity of the vehicle to cross-winds and has a detrimental effect on vehicle handling due to the vehicle's higher centre of gravity. Distribute the load evenly and secure it properly with retaining straps. Adjust the tyre pressure and vehicle speed according to the load conditions. Check and retighten the straps frequently.

Do not drive faster than 75 mph.

The permissible roof load is 60 kg. The roof load is the combined weight of the roof rack and the load.



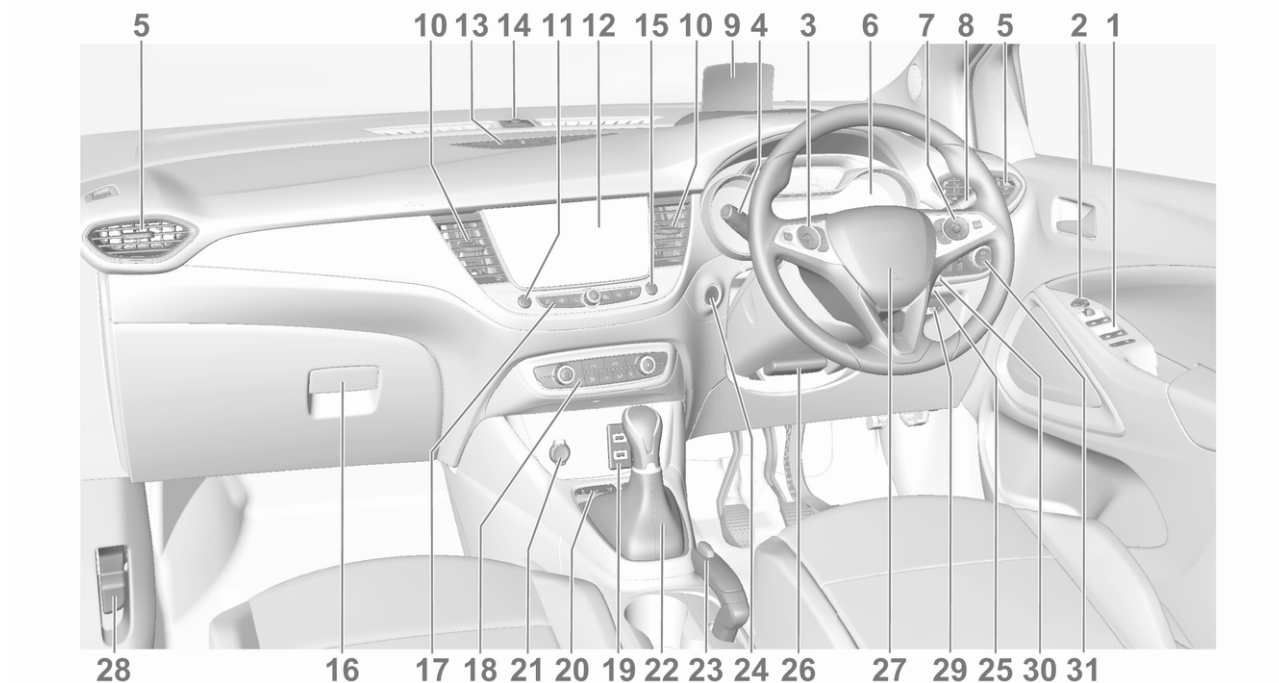
# Instruments and controls

<b>Instrument panel overview</b> .....	<b>56</b>
<b>Controls</b> .....	<b>58</b>
Steering wheel adjustment .....	58
Steering wheel controls .....	58
Heated steering wheel .....	58
Horn .....	59
Windscreen wiper and washer ..	59
Rear window wiper and washer .....	61
Outside temperature .....	61
Clock .....	62
Power outlets .....	62
Inductive charging .....	63
Cigarette lighter .....	64
Ashtrays .....	64
<b>Warning lights, gauges and indicators</b> .....	<b>64</b>
Speedometer .....	64
Odometer .....	65
Trip odometer .....	65
Tachometer .....	65
Fuel gauge .....	66
Engine coolant temperature gauge .....	66

Engine oil level monitor .....	66
Service display .....	67
Control indicators .....	68
Turn lights .....	69
Seat belt reminder .....	70
Airbag and belt tensioners .....	70
Airbag deactivation .....	70
Charging system .....	71
Malfunction indicator light .....	71
Service vehicle soon .....	71
Stop engine .....	71
System check .....	71
Brake and clutch system .....	72
Parking brake .....	72
Antilock brake system (ABS) .....	72
Gear shifting .....	72
Descent control system .....	73
Lane departure warning .....	73
Electronic Stability Control and Traction Control system .....	73
Electronic Stability Control and Traction Control system off .....	73
Engine coolant temperature .....	73
Preheating .....	73
Exhaust filter .....	73
AdBlue .....	74
Deflation detection system .....	74
Engine oil pressure .....	74
Low fuel .....	75
Autostop .....	75

Exterior light .....	75
Low beam .....	75
High beam .....	75
High beam assist .....	75
Front fog lights .....	75
Rear fog light .....	75
Rain sensor .....	75
Cruise control .....	75
Side blind spot alert .....	75
Active emergency braking .....	75
Speed limiter .....	76
Door open .....	76
<b>Displays</b> .....	<b>76</b>
Driver Information Centre .....	76
Info Display .....	79
Head-up display .....	81
<b>Vehicle messages</b> .....	<b>82</b>
Warning chimes .....	83
<b>Vehicle personalisation</b> .....	<b>83</b>
<b>Telematics services</b> .....	<b>84</b>
Emergency call .....	84
Vauxhall Connect .....	85
ERA GLONASS .....	85

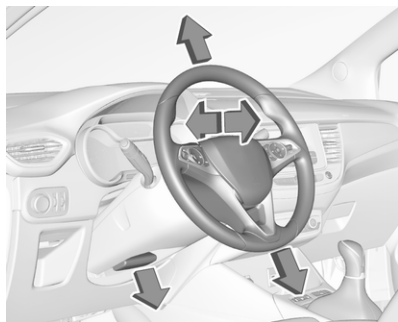
## Instrument panel overview



- |    |                                                                |     |    |                                                            |     |    |                                     |     |
|----|----------------------------------------------------------------|-----|----|------------------------------------------------------------|-----|----|-------------------------------------|-----|
| 1  | Power windows .....                                            | 22  | 11 | Hazard warning flashers .....                              | 90  | 28 | Bonnet release lever .....          | 234 |
| 2  | Exterior mirrors .....                                         | 19  | 12 | Info Display .....                                         | 79  | 29 | Storage .....                       | 47  |
| 3  | Cruise control .....                                           | 192 | 13 | Air vent .....                                             | 169 | 30 | Head-up display .....               | 81  |
|    | Speed limiter .....                                            | 195 | 14 | Sun sensor .....                                           | 164 | 31 | Light switch .....                  | 87  |
|    | Heated steering wheel .....                                    | 58  | 15 | Central locking system .....                               | 10  |    | Headlight range<br>adjustment ..... | 89  |
| 4  | Turn lights .....                                              | 91  | 16 | Glovebox .....                                             | 47  |    | Front fog lights .....              | 91  |
|    | Headlight flash .....                                          | 89  | 17 | Controls for Info Display<br>operation .....               | 79  |    | Rear fog light .....                | 92  |
|    | High beam .....                                                | 88  | 18 | Climate control system .....                               | 160 |    | Instrument illumination .....       | 93  |
|    | High beam assist .....                                         | 88  | 19 | USB port .....                                             | 62  |    |                                     |     |
|    | Exit lighting .....                                            | 94  | 20 | Electronic Stability Control<br>and Traction Control ..... | 188 |    |                                     |     |
|    | Parking lights .....                                           | 92  |    | Lane departure warning .....                               | 218 |    |                                     |     |
|    | Buttons for Driver<br>Information Centre .....                 | 76  |    | Stop-start system .....                                    | 175 |    |                                     |     |
| 5  | Side air vents .....                                           | 169 |    | Parking assist .....                                       | 203 |    |                                     |     |
| 6  | Instruments .....                                              | 64  |    | Advanced parking assist .....                              | 206 |    |                                     |     |
|    | Driver Information Centre .....                                | 76  |    | Electric child locks .....                                 | 14  |    |                                     |     |
| 7  | Infotainment controls .....                                    | 58  | 21 | Power outlet .....                                         | 62  |    |                                     |     |
| 8  | Windscreen wiper and<br>washer, rear wiper and<br>washer ..... | 59  | 22 | Selector lever .....                                       | 183 |    |                                     |     |
| 9  | Head-up display .....                                          | 81  | 23 | Parking brake .....                                        | 187 |    |                                     |     |
| 10 | Air vents .....                                                | 169 | 24 | Power button .....                                         | 173 |    |                                     |     |
|    |                                                                |     | 25 | Ignition switch .....                                      | 172 |    |                                     |     |
|    |                                                                |     | 26 | Steering wheel adjustment .....                            | 58  |    |                                     |     |
|    |                                                                |     | 27 | Horn .....                                                 | 59  |    |                                     |     |

## Controls

### Steering wheel adjustment



Unlock lever, adjust steering wheel, then engage lever and ensure it is fully locked.

Do not adjust steering wheel unless vehicle is stationary and steering wheel lock has been released.

### Steering wheel controls



Cruise control and speed limiter are operated via the controls on the left side of the steering wheel.

On the same side is located the switch for the heated steering wheel.

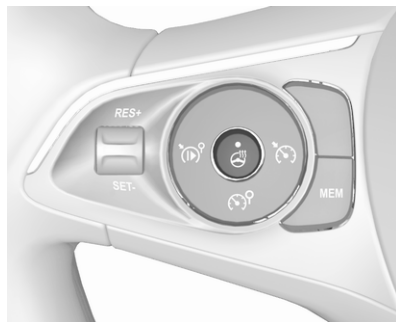
Infotainment system can be operated via the controls on the right side of the steering wheel.


Driver assistance systems ↪ 192.

Further information is available in the Infotainment system section.

Heated steering wheel ↪ 58.

### Heated steering wheel



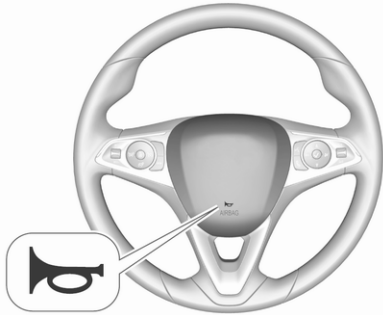
Activate heating by pressing . Activation is indicated by the LED in the button.

Heating is operational when the engine is running and during an Autostop.

The heating works only when the outside temperature is below 20 °C.

Stop-start system ↪ 175.

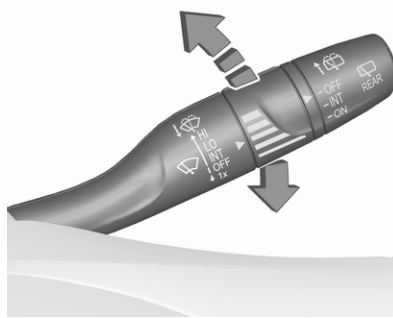
## Horn



Press .

## Windscreen wiper and washer

### Windscreen wiper with adjustable wiper frequency

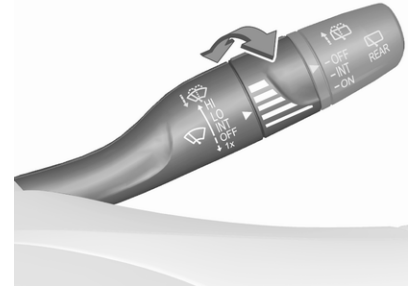


- HI** : fast
- LO** : slow
- INT** : interval wiping
- OFF** : off
- 1x** : single wipe

Do not use if the windscreen is frozen.  
Switch off in car washes.

To activate interval wiping mode the next time ignition is switched on, press the lever downwards to position **OFF** and back to **INT**.

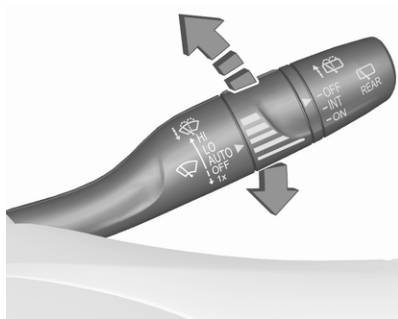
### Adjustable wiper frequency



Wiper lever in position **INT**.

Turn the adjuster wheel to adjust the wiping frequency.

### Windscreen wiper with rain sensor



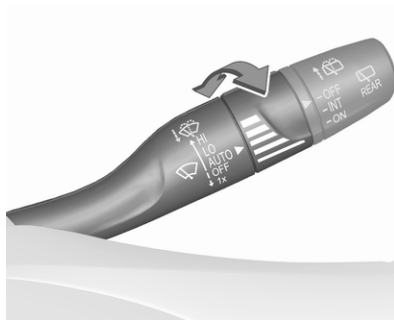
- HI** : fast  
**LO** : slow  
**AUTO** : automatic wiping with rain sensor  
**OFF** : off  
**1x** : single wipe

In **AUTO** position, the rain sensor detects the amount of water on the windscreen and automatically regulates the frequency of the windscreen wiper. If ignition is switched off, automatic wiping mode is deactivated. To activate automatic wiping mode the next time ignition is

switched on, press the lever downwards to position **OFF** and back to **AUTO**.

Do not use if the windscreen is frozen.  
Switch off in car washes.

### Adjustable sensitivity of the rain sensor



Wiper lever in position **AUTO**.

Turn the adjuster wheel to adjust the sensitivity of the rain sensor.

Make sure the sensor is not blocked  
⇨ 21.

Control indicator  ⇨ 75.

### Windscreen washer



Pull lever. Washer fluid is sprayed onto the windscreen and the wiper wipes a few times.

Washer fluid ⇨ 236.

## Rear window wiper and washer

### Rear window wiper



**OFF** : off

**INT** : intermittent operation

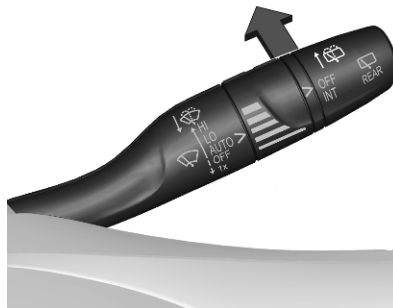
Do not use if the rear window is frozen.

Switch off in car washes.

The rear window wiper comes on automatically when the windscreen wiper is switched on and reverse gear is engaged.

Activation or deactivation of this function can be changed in the Vehicle personalisation menu ↗ 83.

### Rear window washer



Push lever.

Washer fluid is sprayed onto the rear window and the wiper wipes a few times.

The rear window washer system is deactivated when the fluid level is low.

Washer fluid ↗ 236.

## Outside temperature

A drop in temperature is indicated immediately and a rise in temperature after a time delay.



Illustration shows an example.

If outside temperature drops to 3 °C, a warning message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

### **Warning**

The road surface may already be icy even though the display indicates a few degrees above 0 °C.

## Clock

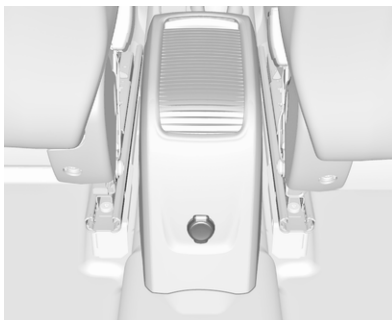
Date and time are shown in the Info Display ↗ 79.

Setting date and time, see Infotainment system section.

## Power outlets



A 12 V power outlet is located in the centre console.



Another power outlet is located in the console between the front seats.

Do not exceed the maximum power consumption of 120 W.

With ignition off, the power outlet is deactivated. Additionally, the power outlet is deactivated in the event of low vehicle battery voltage.

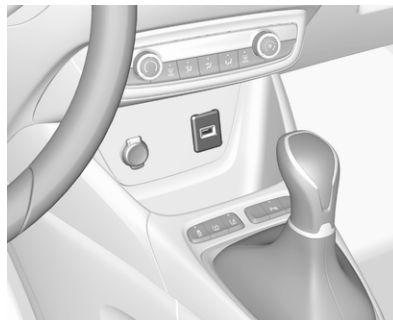
Electrical accessories that are connected must comply with the electromagnetic compatibility requirements laid down in DIN VDE 40 839.

Do not connect any current-delivering accessories, e.g. electrical charging devices or batteries.

Do not damage the outlets by using unsuitable plugs.

Stop-start system ↗ 175.

## USB charging port



One or two USB ports are prepared for charging devices.

When two USB ports are available, the upper USB port can be used to connect a phone for phone projection.

### Notice

The sockets must always be kept clean and dry.

USB port and phone projection see Infotainment system section.



## Inductive charging

### ⚠ Warning

Inductive charging can affect the operation of implanted pacemakers or other medical devices. If applicable, seek medical advice before using the inductive charging device.

### ⚠ Warning

Remove any metal objects from the charging device before charging a mobile device, as these objects could become very hot.



To charge a mobile device:

1. Remove all objects from the charging device.
2. Place the mobile device with the display facing upwards on the charging device.
3. LED illuminates green, when mobile device is charging.

The mobile device must be smaller than 7 cm by 15 cm to fit into the charging device.

PMA or Qi compatible mobile devices can be charged inductively.

On some mobile devices, a back cover with an integrated coil or a jacket may be required to use inductive charging.

Protective cover for the mobile device could have impact on the inductive charging.

LED illuminates yellow, when

- metal objects have been detected in the charging area
- mobile device was not placed properly.

In the case that the mobile device is not charging properly:

1. Remove the mobile device from the charging device.
2. Rotate the mobile device by 180°.
3. Wait three seconds after the LED has extinguished and place the mobile device on the charging device again.

## Cigarette lighter

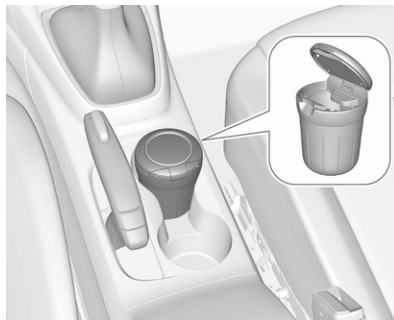


Press in the cigarette lighter. It switches off automatically once the element is glowing. Pull out the cigarette lighter.

## Ashtrays

### Caution

To be used only for ash and not for combustible rubbish.



A portable ashtray can be placed in the cupholders.

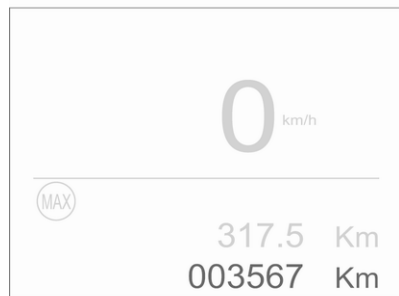
## Warning lights, gauges and indicators

### Speedometer



Indicates vehicle speed.

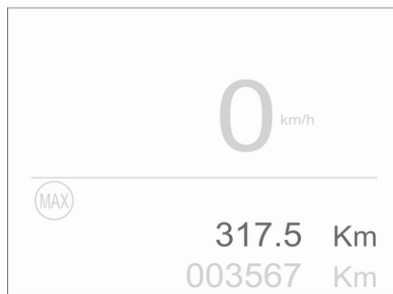
## Odometer



The total recorded distance is displayed in miles.

### Trip odometer

The recorded distance since the last reset is displayed in the Driver Information Centre.



### Monochrome display

Trip odometer counts up to 9,999.9 miles without automatic reset.

Press **000** for 2 seconds to reset trip odometer.

### Colour display

Trip odometer counts up to 1,999.9 miles and resets then automatically.

Press **000** for 2 seconds to reset trip odometer.

The trip / fuel information menu provides additionally two trip counter ↷ 76.

## Tachometer



Displays the engine speed.

Drive in a low engine speed range for each gear as much as possible.

A red marker indicates the beginning of the warning zone of excessive revolutions. For Diesel engines, the warning zone starts at 5000 revolutions per minute. For petrol engines, the warning zone starts at 7000 revolutions per minute.

**Caution**

If the needle is in the red warning zone, the maximum permitted engine speed is exceeded. Engine at risk.

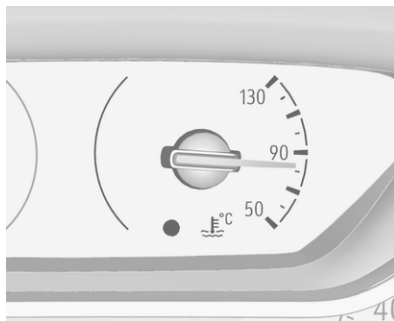
**Fuel gauge**

Displays the fuel level in the tank.

Control indicator ● illuminates if the level in the tank is low.

Never run the fuel tank dry.

The top-up quantity may be less than the specified fuel tank capacity, due to the remaining fuel in the tank.

**Engine coolant temperature gauge**

Displays the coolant temperature.

- 50 : engine operating temperature not yet reached
- 90 : normal operating temperature
- 130 : temperature too high

Control indicator ● illuminates if engine coolant temperature is too high.



**Caution**

If engine coolant temperature is too high, stop vehicle, switch off engine. Danger to engine. Check coolant level.

**Engine oil level monitor**

The state of the engine oil level is displayed in the Driver Information Centre for a few seconds following the service information after switching on the ignition.

A proper state of engine oil level is indicated by the message **Oil level correct**.

If engine oil level is low,  flashes and **Oil level incorrect** is indicated, accompanied by the  indicator. Confirm engine oil level by using the dipstick and top up engine oil respectively.

Engine oil ⇄ 234.

A fault of measurement is indicated by the message **Oil level measurement invalid**. Check engine oil level manually by using the dipstick.


## Service display


The service system informs when to change the engine oil and filter or a vehicle service is required. Based on driving conditions, the interval at which an engine oil and filter change is required can vary considerably.


Service information ⇨ 270.

A required service due is displayed in the Driver Information Centre for seven seconds after switching on the ignition.

If no service is required for the next 1800 miles or more no service information appears in the display.

If service is required within the next 1800 miles, the remaining distance or time duration is indicated for several seconds. Simultaneously  illuminates permanently as reminder.


If service is required in less than 600 miles,  flashes and then illuminates permanently. Remaining distance or time duration is indicated for several seconds.

Overdue service is indicated by a message in the Driver Information Centre which indicates the overdue distance.  flashes and then illuminates permanently until service is executed.

## Reset of service interval

After each service, the service indicator must be reset to ensure proper functionality. It is recommended to seek the assistance of a workshop.

Operate as following:

- switch off ignition
- press and hold button  or **CHECK**
- switch on ignition, the distance indication begins a countdown
- when the display indicates =0, release the button

The symbol  disappears.

## Retrieving service information

To retrieve the status of the service information at any time press left button underneath the Driver Information Centre.



Or



The service information is displayed for a few seconds.

Service information ⇨ 270.

## Control indicators

The control indicators described are not present in all vehicles. The description applies to all instrument versions.

Depending on the equipment, the position of the control indicators may vary. When the ignition is switched on, most control indicators will illuminate briefly as a functionality test.

The control indicator colours mean:

- red : danger, important reminder
- yellow : warning, information, fault
- green : confirmation of activation
- blue : confirmation of activation
- white : confirmation of activation
- grey : system paused, at least one system limitation has been detected

Control indicators are located in the Driver Information Centre.











Driver Information Centre ⇨ 76.












## Overview
















The numbers in the overview table indicate what to do, when a control indicator illuminates or flashes.



- 1 : only for information
- 2 : information and warning
- 3 : seek the assistance of a workshop
- 4 : stop engine and seek the assistance of a workshop

- 5 : have the cause of the fault remedied immediately by a workshop
- 6 : stop vehicle, do not continue the journey and seek the assistance of a workshop

-  1 Turn lights ⇨ 69
-  2 Seat belt reminder ⇨ 70
-  5 Airbag and belt tensioners ⇨ 70
-  2 Airbag activated ⇨ 70
-  2 Airbag deactivated ⇨ 70
-  4 Charging system ⇨ 71
-  5 Malfunction indicator light ⇨ 71
-  5 Service vehicle soon ⇨ 71
-  4 Stop engine ⇨ 71
-  4 System check ⇨ 71

	6	Brake and clutch system ↻ 72
	1 / 5	Parking brake ↻ 72
	2	Antilock brake system (ABS) ↻ 72
	1	Gear shifting ↻ 72
	1	Descent control system ↻ 73
	1	Lane departure warning ↻ 73
	2 / 5	Electronic Stability Control and Traction Control system ↻ 73
	2	Electronic Stability Control and Traction Control system off ↻ 73
	4	Engine coolant temper- ature high ↻ 73
	1	Preheating ↻ 73
	2 / 3	Exhaust filter ↻ 73

	1	AdBlue ↻ 74
	2 / 3	Deflation detection system ↻ 74
	4	Engine oil pressure ↻ 74
	2	Low fuel ↻ 75
	1	Autostop ↻ 75
	1	Exterior light ↻ 75
	1	Low beam ↻ 75
	1	High beam ↻ 75
	1	High beam assist ↻ 75
	1	Front fog lights ↻ 75
	1	Rear fog light ↻ 75
	1	Rain sensor ↻ 75
	1	Cruise control ↻ 75
	1	Side blind spot alert ↻ 75
	2 / 3	Active emergency braking ↻ 75

	1	Speed limiter ↻ 76
	2	Door open ↻ 76

## Turn lights

↻ illuminates or flashes green.

## Illuminates briefly

The parking lights are switched on.

## Flashes

A turn light or the hazard warning flashers are activated.

Rapid flashing: failure of a turn light or associated fuse.

This includes turn lights connected to the socket of the towing equipment.


Bulb replacement ↻ 240.

Fuses ↻ 248.


Turn lights ↻ 91.

## Seat belt reminder



### Seat belt reminder on all seats

 illuminates or flashes red in the instrument cluster together with the indication in the overhead console for each seat belt.



- When the ignition is switched on,  in the instrument cluster and the symbol for the respective seat in the overhead console

comes on, if the seat belt of any occupied seat has not been fastened.


- After driving off,  in the instrument cluster and the symbol for the respective seat in the overhead console flashes for a certain time together with a chime. After a certain time of driving  illuminates constantly until the seat belt of the respective seat has been fastened or if any passenger has unfastened the seat belt.

Seat belts ⇨ 32.

## Airbag and belt tensioners

 illuminates red.

When the ignition is switched on, the control indicator illuminates for approx. four seconds. If it does not illuminate, does not go out after four seconds or illuminates whilst driving, there is a fault in the airbag system. Seek the assistance of a workshop. The airbags and belt pretensioners may fail to trigger in the event of an accident.

Deployment of the belt pretensioners or airbags is indicated by continuous illumination of .

### Warning

Have the cause of the fault remedied immediately by a workshop.

Belt pretensioners ⇨ 32.

Airbag system ⇨ 35.

## Airbag deactivation



 ON illuminates yellow.



The front passenger airbag is activated.

 OFF illuminates yellow.

The front passenger airbag is deactivated.

Airbag deactivation ⇨ 40.

## Charging system


 illuminates red.

Illuminates when the ignition is switched on and extinguishes shortly after the engine starts.

## Illuminates when the engine is running

Stop, switch off engine. Vehicle battery is not charging. Engine cooling may be interrupted. The brake servo unit may cease to be effective. Seek the assistance of a workshop.

## Malfunction indicator light

 illuminates or flashes yellow.

Illuminates when the ignition is switched on and extinguishes shortly after the engine starts.

## Illuminates when the engine is running

Fault in the emission control system. The permitted emission limits may be exceeded.

Seek the assistance of a workshop immediately.

## Flashes when the engine is running

The engine management system has a fault that could lead to catalytic converter damage. Ease up on the accelerator until the flashing stops. Seek the assistance of a workshop immediately.

## Service vehicle soon

 illuminates yellow.

Illuminates briefly when the ignition is switched on.

May illuminate together with other control indicators and a corresponding message in the Driver Information Centre.

Seek the assistance of a workshop immediately.

## Stop engine


**STOP** illuminates red.

Illuminates briefly when the ignition is switched on.

Illuminates together with other control indicators, accompanied by a warning chime and a corresponding message in the Driver Information Centre.

Stop engine immediately and seek the assistance of a workshop.

## System check

 illuminates yellow or red.

## Illuminates yellow

A minor engine fault has been detected.

**Illuminates red**

A major engine fault has been detected.

Stop engine as soon as possible and seek the assistance of a workshop.

**Brake and clutch system**

① illuminates red.

The brake and clutch fluid level is too low, when parking brake is not applied ⇨ 236.

<b>⚠ Warning</b>
Stop. Do not continue your journey. Consult a workshop.

Illuminates when the manual parking brake is applied and ignition is switched on ⇨ 187.

Brake fluid ⇨ 236.

**Parking brake**

Ⓢ illuminates red.

Illuminates when the parking brake is applied and ignition is switched on ⇨ 187.

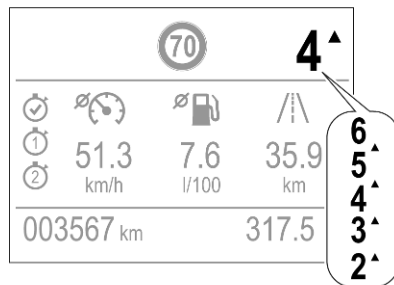
**Antilock brake system (ABS)**

Ⓢ illuminates yellow.

Illuminates for a few seconds after the ignition is switched on. The system is ready for operation when the control indicator extinguishes.

If the control indicator does not extinguish after a few seconds, or if it illuminates while driving, there is a fault in the ABS. The brake system remains operational but without ABS regulation.

Antilock brake system ⇨ 187.

**Gear shifting****Manual transmission**

▲ with the number of a higher gear is indicated, when upshifting into this gear is recommended for fuel saving reasons.

**Automatic transmission manual mode**

▲ is indicated, when upshifting is recommended for fuel saving reasons.

## Descent control system

 illuminates or flashes green.

### Illuminates green


The system is switched on and ready to operate.

### Flashes green

The system is in operation.

Descent control system ⇨ 190.

## Lane departure warning

 flashes yellow when the system recognises an unintended lane change.

Lane departure warning ⇨ 218.

## Electronic Stability Control and Traction Control system

 illuminates or flashes yellow.

## Illuminates

A fault in the system is present. Continued driving is possible. Driving stability, however, may deteriorate depending on road surface conditions.

Have the cause of the fault remedied by a workshop.

## Flashes

The system is actively engaged. Engine output may be reduced and the vehicle may be braked automatically to a small degree.

Electronic Stability Control and Traction Control system ⇨ 188.

## Electronic Stability Control and Traction Control system off

 illuminates yellow.

The systems are deactivated.

## Engine coolant temperature

 illuminates red.

## Illuminates when the engine is running

Stop, switch off engine.

### Caution

Coolant temperature too high.

Check coolant level immediately  
⇨ 235.

If there is sufficient coolant, consult a workshop.

## Preheating

 illuminates yellow.

Preheating of diesel engine is activated. Only activates when outside temperature is low. Start the engine when control indicator extinguishes.

Starting the engine ⇨ 174.

## Exhaust filter

 or  illuminates yellow.

The exhaust filter requires cleaning.

Continue driving until the control indicator extinguishes.

### Illuminates temporarily

Start of saturation of the exhaust filter.  
Start cleaning process as soon as possible by driving at a vehicle speed of at least 40 mph.

### Illuminates constantly

Indication of a low additive level. Seek the assistance of a workshop.

Exhaust filter ↷ 179.

## AdBlue

 flashes or illuminates yellow.

### Illuminates yellow

The remaining driving range is between 370 miles and 1500 miles.


### Flashes yellow

The remaining driving range is between 0 and 370 miles.

AdBlue level is low. Refill AdBlue soon to avoid prevention of the engine start.

AdBlue ↷ 180.

## Deflation detection system

 illuminates or flashes yellow.

### Illuminates

Tyre pressure loss in one or more wheels. Stop immediately and check tyre pressure.

### Flashes

Fault in system. Consult a workshop.  
Deflation detection system ↷ 251.

## Engine oil pressure

 illuminates red.

Illuminates when the ignition is switched on and extinguishes shortly after the engine starts.

## Illuminates when the engine is running

### Caution

Engine lubrication may be interrupted. This may result in damage to the engine and / or locking of the drive wheels.

1. Select neutral gear.
2. Move out of the flow of traffic as quickly as possible without impeding other vehicles.
3. Switch off ignition.

### Warning

When the engine is off, considerably more force is needed to brake and steer.

During an Autostop, the brake servo unit will still be operational.

Do not remove key until vehicle is stationary, otherwise the steering wheel lock could engage unexpectedly.

Keep engine turned off and let the vehicle be towed to a workshop  
 ⇨ 234.

## Low fuel

● illuminates yellow.

Level in fuel tank is too low.

Refuelling ⇨ 223.

Bleeding the diesel fuel system  
 ⇨ 239.

## Autostop

(A) illuminates or flashes green.

## Illuminates green

Engine is in an Autostop.

## Flashes green

Autostop is temporarily unavailable, or Autostop mode is invoked automatically.

Stop-start system ⇨ 175.

## Exterior light

➤⊖ illuminates green.

The exterior lights are on ⇨ 87.

## Low beam

≡D illuminates green.

Illuminated when low beam is on.

## High beam

≡D illuminates blue.

Illuminated when high beam is on or during headlight flash ⇨ 88.

## High beam assist

≡D illuminates green.

The high beam assist is activated  
 ⇨ 88.

## Front fog lights

⊘D illuminates green.

The front fog lights are on ⇨ 91.

## Rear fog light

⊘⊚ illuminates yellow.

The rear fog light is on ⇨ 92.

## Rain sensor

☁ illuminates green.

Illuminated when automatic wiping with rain sensor is activated.

Windscreen wiper and washer ⇨ 59.

## Cruise control

⊘⊚ illuminates in the Driver Information Centre.

Cruise control ⇨ 192.

## Side blind spot alert

⊘<sup>SB</sup> illuminates green.

The system is active ⇨ 211.

## Active emergency braking

⊘⊚ illuminates or flashes yellow.


## Illuminates

The system has been deactivated or a fault has been detected.

Additionally, a warning message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

Check the reason of the deactivation ⇨ 199 and in case of a system fault, seek the assistance of a workshop.

### Notice

 also illuminates if the seat belts of the front passengers are not fastened. In this case, active emergency braking is deactivated.

## Flashes


The system is actively engaged.

Depending on the situation, the vehicle may automatically brake moderately or hard.

Forward collision alert ⇨ 197.

Front pedestrian protection ⇨ 202.

## Speed limiter

 illuminates in the Driver Information Centre.

Speed limiter ⇨ 195.

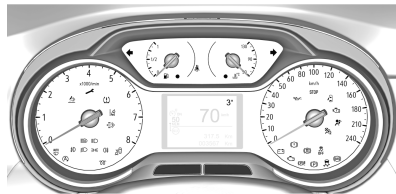
## Door open

 illuminates red.

A door or the tailgate is open.

## Displays

### Driver Information Centre



The Driver Information Centre is located in the instrument cluster.

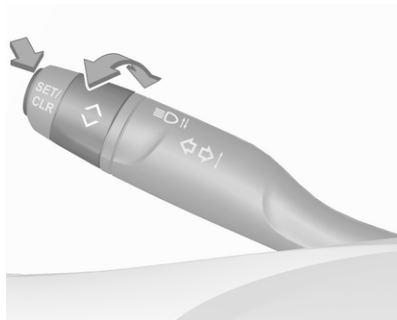
Depending on the version, the Driver Information Centre is available as monochrome or colour display.

Driver Information Centre indicates:

- overall and trip odometer
- digital speed indication
- trip / fuel information menu
- gear shift indication
- service information
- vehicle and warning messages
- driver assistance messages

- pop-up messages
- AdBlue information

### Selecting menus and functions



The menus and functions can be selected via the buttons on the indicator lever.

Turn the adjuster wheel to select a page in the trip / fuel information menu.


Press **SET/CLR** to confirm or reset a function.

Vehicle and service messages are popped up in the Driver Information Centre if required. Scroll messages

by turning the adjuster wheel. Confirm messages by pressing **SET/CLR**.

Additionally, some menus can be selected via the left button:



Press  to switch between the respective menus.

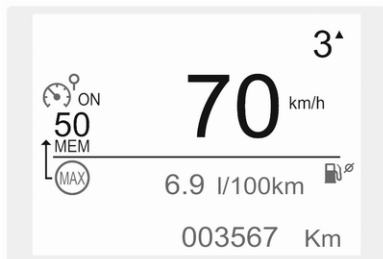
Or



Press **CHECK** to switch between the respective menus.

Vehicle messages ⇨ 82.

### Trip / fuel information menu, monochrome display



Turn the adjuster wheel to select a page:

#### Trip odometer

Trip odometer ↻ 65.

#### Average fuel consumption

Display of average consumption. The measurement can be reset at any time and starts with a default value. To reset, press **SET/CLR** for a few seconds.

#### Average speed

Display of average speed. The measurement can be reset at any time.

To reset, press **SET/CLR** for a few seconds.

#### Fuel range

Range is calculated from current fuel level and current consumption. The display shows average values.

After refuelling, the range is updated automatically after a brief delay.

When the fuel level is low, a message appears on the display and the control indicator ● in the fuel gauge illuminates ↻ 75.

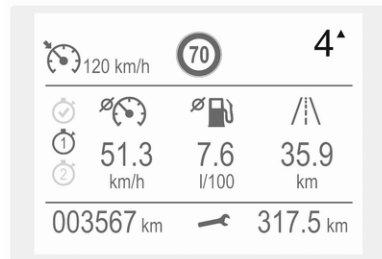
#### Instantaneous Fuel Consumption

Display of the instantaneous consumption.

#### Digital speed

Digital display of the instantaneous speed and recognised speed limit.

### Trip / fuel information menu, colour display



Different pages with combined information can be selected.

Turn the adjuster wheel to select a page.

#### Information page: Fuel range

Range is calculated from current fuel level and current consumption. The display shows average values.

After refuelling, the range is updated automatically after a brief delay.



When the fuel level is low, a message appears on the display and the control indicator ● in the fuel gauge illuminates ⇨ 75.

### **Instantaneous Fuel Consumption**

Display of the instantaneous consumption.

### **Trip 1 page:**

#### **Average speed**

Display of average speed. The measurement can be reset at any time.

#### **Average fuel consumption**

Display of average consumption. The measurement can be reset at any time and starts with a default value.

#### **Distance travelled**

Displays the current distance for trip 1 since the reset.

Trip odometer counts up to 9,999.9 miles without automatic reset.

The values of trip 1 page can be reset by pressing **SET/CLR** for a few seconds.

### **Trip 2 page:**

#### **Average speed**

Display of average speed. The measurement can be reset at any time.

#### **Average fuel consumption**

Display of average consumption. The measurement can be reset at any time and starts with a default value.

#### **Distance travelled**

Displays the current distance for trip 2 since a certain reset.

The values of trip 2 page can be reset by pressing **SET/CLR** for a few seconds.

#### **Digital speed page**

Digital display of the instantaneous speed.

#### **Stop and Start time counter**

A time counter calculates the time spent in STOP mode during a journey. It resets to zero every time the ignition is switched on.

#### **Compass page**

Displays the geographic direction of driving.

### **Blank page**

No trip/fuel information is displayed.

### **AdBlue**

Press  or **CHECK** repeatedly until the AdBlue menu is shown.

### **AdBlue range**

Indicates an estimate of the AdBlue level. A message indicates whether the level is sufficient or low.

⇨ 180.

### **Info Display**

The Info Display is located in the instrument panel near the instrument cluster.

Depending on the vehicle configuration the vehicle has a

- Multimedia with touchscreen functionality
- or
- Multimedia Navi Pro with touchscreen functionality

The Info Display can indicate:

- time ⇨ 62
- outside temperature ⇨ 61
- date ⇨ 62
- Infotainment system, see description in the Infotainment system section
- indication of rear view camera ⇨ 216
- indication of panoramic view system ⇨ 213
- indication of parking assist instructions ⇨ 203
- navigation, see description in the Infotainment system section
- vehicle and system messages ⇨ 82
- settings for vehicle personalisation ⇨ 83

## Multimedia

### Selecting menus and settings

Menus and settings are accessed via the touchscreen.




Press  to switch on the display.

Press  to display the homepage.

Touch required menu display icon.

Touch a respective icon to confirm a selection.

Touch  to return to the next higher menu level.

Press  to return to the homepage.

For further information, see Infotainment system section.

Vehicle personalisation ⇨ 83.

## Multimedia Navi Pro

### Selecting menus and settings

There are three options to operate the display:


- via buttons below the display
- by touching the touchscreen
- via speech recognition

### Button and touch operation



Press  to switch on the display.

Press **SET** to select system settings (units, language, time and date).

Press  to select vehicle settings or driving functions.

Touch required menu display icon or a function.

Confirm a required function or selection by touching.

Touch ← on the display to exit a menu without changing a setting.

For further information, see Infotainment system section.

### Speech recognition

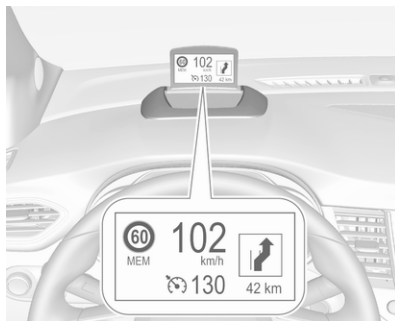
Description see Infotainment system section.

Vehicle personalisation ⇨ 83.

## Head-up display

The head-up display displays driver information onto a foldable projection plane on the driver's side.

The information appears as an image projected from a lense in the instrument panel onto the projection plane directly ahead in driver's view. The image appears focused out toward the front of the vehicle.



Head-up display views:

- vehicle speed
- speed limits by the traffic sign recognition
- set speed of speed limiter
- set speed of cruise control
- navigation information.



### Adjust position of head-up display image

1. Adjust the driver's seat.
2. Start the engine.
3. Press Δ or ▽ to centre the image.  
It can only be adjusted up and down, not side to side.

#### Warning

If the head-up display image is too bright or too high in your field of view, it may obstruct your view when it is dark outside. Be sure to

keep the head-up display image dim and placed low in your field of view.

### Adjust brightness

The head-up display image will automatically dim and brighten to compensate for outside lighting. Brightness can also be adjusted manually as needed:

Press ☀ to brighten the display. Press 🌙 to dim the display.

The image can temporarily illuminate depending on angle and position of sunlight.

### Switching off

Press 🌙 and hold to turn the head-up display off.

### Language

Preferred language can be set in vehicle personalisation menu ↗ 83.

### Units

Units can be changed in vehicle personalisation menu ↗ 83.

### Care of head-up display

Clean the projection plane of the head-up display with a soft cloth sprayed with glass cleaner. Wipe the lens gently, then dry it.

### System limitations

Head-up display may not operate properly when:

- The lens in the instrument panel is covered by objects or is not clean.
- Display brightness is too dim or bright.
- Image is not adjusted to the proper height.
- The driver wears polarised sunglasses.

If the head-up image is not correct for other reasons, contact a workshop.

## Vehicle messages

Messages are indicated in the Driver Information Centre, in some cases together with a warning chime.



Press **SET / CLR** to confirm a message.

### Vehicle and service messages

The vehicle messages are displayed as text. Follow the instructions given in the messages.

## Messages in the Info Display

Some important messages may appear additionally in the Info Display. Some messages only pop-up for a few seconds.

## Warning chimes

The warning chime regarding not fastened seat belts has priority over any other warning chime.

Whenever a warning chime sounds, pay attention to the messages displayed and the warning lights in the Driver Information Centre.

## When starting the engine or whilst driving

A warning chime will sound in situations such as

- a seat belt is not fastened
- a door or the tailgate is not fully closed when starting off
- a certain speed is exceeded with parking brake applied
- cruise control deactivates automatically

- a programmed speed or speed limit is exceeded
- a warning message appears in the Driver Information Centre
- If the electronic key is not in the passenger compartment.
- If the parking assist detects an object.
- If an unintended lane change occurs.
- If the exhaust filter has reached the maximum filling level.

## When the vehicle is parked and / or the driver's door is opened

- With exterior lights on.

## During an Autostop

- If the driver's door is opened.
- If any condition for an autostart is not fulfilled.

## Vehicle personalisation

The vehicle's behaviour can be personalised by changing the settings in the Info Display.

Some functions are only displayed or active when the engine is running.

## Multimedia



Press  to open homepage.

Touch **Settings**.

Safety, comfort, lighting and vehicle access settings are adjustable.

## Multimedia Navi Pro



Press .

Vehicle and driving function settings are adjustable.

## Telematics services

### Emergency call

#### Notice

In order to be available and operational, the system requires functioning vehicle electrics, mobile service and GPS or GLONASS satellite link. Depending on equipment, a backup battery is used.

#### Notice

The service is only available for markets where it is legally required. Furthermore, it depends on the availability of the emergency centres and the infrastructure in the country.

### Status LED in the overhead console

Illuminates green and red and extinguishes after a short time, when the ignition is switched on: the system works properly.

Illuminates red: fault in the system. Contact a workshop.

Flashes red: backup battery needs replacement. Contact a workshop.

## Emergency call

The emergency call function will establish a connection to the nearest public safety answering point (PSAP). A minimum set of data including vehicle and location information will be sent to the PSAP.

In case of an emergency, press the red **SOS** button in the overhead console for more than two seconds. The LED flashes green to confirm that a connection to the nearest PSAP is being established. The LED illuminates steadily as long as the call is active.

Pressing the **SOS** button immediately a second time will terminate the call. The LED switches off.

### Automatic crash notification

In case of an accident with airbag deployment and without damage of needed hardware, an automatic emergency call is established and an automatic crash notification will be transmitted to the next PSAP.

## Vauxhall Connect

Vauxhall Connect comprises multiple connected services accessible via app, online or within the vehicle.

### Notice

Full functionality of


Vauxhall Connect is subject to registration and proper activation.

Connected services may include live navigation such as online traffic information and vehicle status and information such as maintenance alerts.

Services accessible within the vehicle also include emergency call and breakdown call. These functions are automatically activated. Terms and conditions apply.

Emergency call ⇨ 85.


## Breakdown call

Pressing the  button in the overhead console for more than two seconds connects to a roadside assistance service provider.

For information about coverage and scope of services of the roadside assistance, please refer to the information provided by the Vauxhall Retailer with the order form.

## Privacy settings

Privacy settings of Vauxhall Connect can be configured in your vehicle. This will impact the set of data being sent, e.g., in case a breakdown call is triggered. The emergency call function will not be impacted.

Change the privacy settings in the vehicle by simultaneously pressing the  button and the **SOS** button.

Versions with navigation system: privacy settings can also be changed in the system settings menu.

## ERA GLONASS

ERA GLONASS is a manually or automatically actuated emergency service. Emergency centres provide assistance and information during an emergency.

In case of an accident with an impact of appropriate severity, an emergency call is placed automatically, regardless of airbag activation. An immediate connection with an advisor will be established who will check whether help is needed.

### Danger

The service is only available for markets where it is legally required and activated. Furthermore, the manual and the automatic emergency call function depend on the availability of the emergency centres and the infrastructure in the country.

### Notice

In order to be available and operational, the system requires functioning vehicle electrics, mobile service and GLONASS satellite link. Depending on equipment, a backup battery is used.

## Control buttons



### SOS button

In an emergency situation press and hold SOS button for more than 2 seconds. The green LED and the voice message will confirm that the call has been sent to the emergency centre.

The green LED illuminates when the service connection is established. It will go out when the connection is complete.

A minimum set of data is transferred to the emergency centre, including such data as car location, car model, vehicle identification number. The operator will contact you and, if necessary, send rescue workers from the relevant support services.

To cancel the call, press the SOS button again. The green LED goes out. The voice message confirms the cancellation.

### Status LED

The system provides feedback via voice messages and an LED.

- Green : The system is activated. A connection to an operator is on duty.
- Red : The system is booting up after switching on ignition, the LED goes out after 3 seconds. If the LED stays red, a malfunction has been detected in the system. An emergency call may not work. Contact a workshop immediately.
- Red flashing : The internal backup battery is defective. Contact a workshop immediately.

Seek the assistance of a workshop if the LED does not illuminate after switching on the ignition.



## Lighting

<b>Exterior lighting</b> .....	<b>87</b>
Light switch .....	87
Automatic light control .....	88
High beam .....	88
High beam assist .....	88
Headlight flash .....	89
Headlight range adjustment .....	89
Headlights when driving abroad .....	90
Daytime running lights .....	90
LED headlights .....	90
Hazard warning flashers .....	90
Turn lights .....	91
Front fog lights .....	91
Rear fog light .....	92
Parking lights .....	92
Reversing lights .....	92
Misted light covers .....	92
<b>Interior lighting</b> .....	<b>93</b>
Instrument panel illumination control .....	93
Interior lights .....	93
Reading lights .....	93
Sun visor lights .....	93

<b>Lighting features</b> .....	<b>94</b>
Centre console lighting .....	94
Entry lighting .....	94
Exit lighting .....	94
Battery discharge protection .....	94

## Exterior lighting

### Light switch



Turn light switch:

**AUTO** : automatic light control  
switches automatically  
between daytime running  
light and headlight

$\Rightarrow \Leftarrow$  : sidelights

$\Rightarrow \text{D}$  : headlights

Control indicator  $\Rightarrow \Leftarrow \Rightarrow$  75.

### Tail lights

Tail lights are illuminated together  
with low / high beam and sidelights.

## Automatic light control



When the automatic light control function is switched on and the engine is running, the system switches between daytime running lights and headlights automatically depending on the external lighting conditions and information given by the wiper system.

Make sure the sensor is not blocked  
↻ 21.

Daytime running light ↻ 90.

## Automatic headlight activation

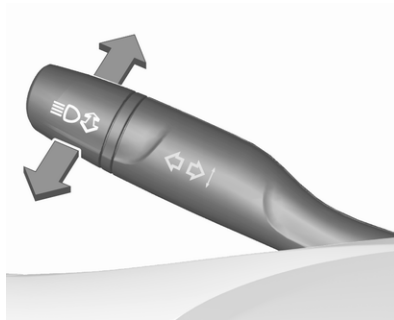
During poor lighting conditions headlights are switched on.

Additionally, headlights are switched on if the windscreen wipers have been activated for several wipes.  
LED headlights ↻ 90.

## Tunnel detection

When a tunnel is entered headlights are switched on immediately.

## High beam



Push to switch from low to high beam.

Pull to deactivate high beam.

High beam assist ↻ 88.

## High beam assist

The camera in the windscreen detects the lights of oncoming or preceding vehicles. Once activated, high beam assist remains active and switches high beam on and off depending on surrounding conditions. The latest setting of the high beam assist will remain after the ignition is switched on again.

This feature automatically activates the high beam in the dark when vehicle speed is faster than 15 mph.

It switches automatically back to low beam when:

- The camera in the windscreen detects the lights of oncoming or preceding vehicles.
- The vehicle speed drops below 9 mph.
- It is foggy or snowy.
- Front or rear fog lights are switched on.
- Driving in urban areas.

If there are no restrictions detected, the system switches back to high beam.

## Activation



Activate high beam assist by pressing . The LED of the button illuminates.

The green control indicator illuminates continuously when the high beam assist is activated, the blue one illuminates when high beam is on.

Control indicator ⇄ 75, ⇄ 75.

## Deactivation

Deactivate high beam assist by pressing . The LED of the button extinguishes.

If a headlight flash is activated when the high beam assist is activated and low beam is on, the high beam assist will be deactivated. The system changes to high beam.

To reactivate the high beam assist, flash the headlights again.

## Headlight flash



Pull to activate the headlight flash.

Pull to deactivate the high beam.

## Headlight range adjustment

### Manual headlight range adjustment

Headlight range can be adjusted manually if vehicle is equipped with halogen or Eco-LED headlights. Uplevel-LED headlights are adjusted automatically.

Dynamic automatic headlight levelling ⇄ 90.



To adapt headlight range to the vehicle load to prevent dazzling: turn thumb wheel to required position.

- 0 : front seats occupied
- 1 : all seats occupied
- 2 : all seats occupied and load compartment laden
- 3 : driver's seat occupied and load compartment laden

## Headlights when driving abroad

Versions with uplevel-LED: when driving in countries where traffic drives on the opposite side of the road, the headlights do not have to be adjusted.

All other versions: consult a workshop.

## Daytime running lights

Daytime running lights increases visibility of the vehicle during daylight.

They are switched on automatically during daytime when engine is running.

The system switches between daytime running lights and low beam automatically, depending on the lighting conditions.

## LED headlights

Eco-LED and uplevel-LED headlights for low and high beam ensure better visibility under all conditions. Uplevel LED headlights include the following functions:

- cornering lights
- high beam assist ⇨ 88
- automatic headlight levelling

### Cornering light

Light switch must be in position **AUTO**.



When turning off, depending on the steering angle and the turn light, particular LEDs are triggered which illuminate the direction of travel. It is activated up to a speed of 25 mph.

## Reverse parking function

To assist driver's orientation when parking, both cornering lights and reversing light illuminate when headlights are activated and reverse gear is engaged. They remain illuminated for a short time after disengaging reverse gear or until driving faster than 4 mph in a forward gear.

### Automatic headlight levelling

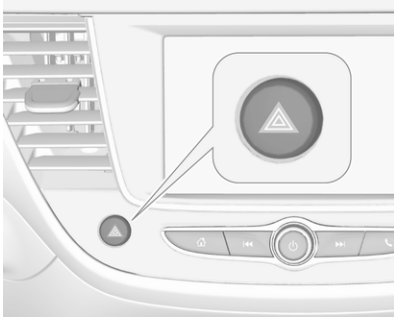
To prevent oncoming traffic from being dazzled, headlight levelling is automatically adjusted.

### Fault in LED headlight system

When the system detects a failure in the LED headlight system, a warning is displayed in the Driver Information Centre.


## Hazard warning flashers

Operated by pressing .

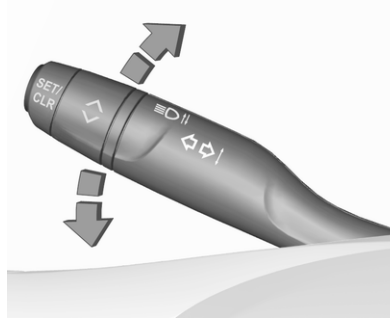


Hazard warning flashers are switched on automatically in the following situations:

- braking in an emergency (depending on the force of deceleration)
- in the event of an accident.

They are switched off by pressing  or accelerating.

## Turn lights



up : right turn light  
down : left turn light

A resistance point can be felt when moving the lever.

Constant flashing is activated when the lever is being moved beyond the resistance point. It is deactivated when the steering wheel is moved in the opposite direction or indicator lever is manually moved back to its neutral position.

After 20 seconds the volume of the audible signal will increase if the speed is above 40 mph.

Activate temporary flashing by holding the lever just before the resistance point. Turn lights will flash until indicator lever is being released.

To activate three flashes, tap the lever briefly without passing the resistance point.

## Front fog lights




Operated by pressing .


Light switch in position **AUTO**: switching on front fog lights will switch headlights on automatically.

## Rear fog light



Operated by pressing .

Light switch in position **AUTO**: switching on rear fog light will switch headlights on automatically.

Light switch in position : rear fog light can only be switched on with front fog lights.

The vehicle rear fog light is deactivated when towing a trailer or a plug is connected with the socket, e.g. when a bicycle carrier is used.

## Parking lights



When the vehicle is parked, the parking lights on one side can be activated:

1. Switch off ignition.
2. Move the lever all the way up (right parking lights) or down (left parking lights).

Confirmed by a signal and the corresponding turn light control indicator.

## Reversing lights

The reversing light comes on when the ignition is on and reverse gear is selected.

## Misted light covers

The inside of the light housing may mist up briefly in poor, wet and cold weather conditions, in heavy rain or after washing. The mist disappears quickly by itself. To help, switch on the headlights.


## Interior lighting

### Instrument panel illumination control



Brightness of the following lights can be adjusted when headlights are switched on:

- instrument cluster illumination
- Info Display
- illuminated switches and operation elements

Turn thumb wheel  and hold until the desired brightness is obtained.

## Interior lights




During entry and exit of the vehicle, the front and rear courtesy lights automatically switch on and then off after a delay.

### Notice

In the event of an accident with airbag deployment the courtesy lights are turned on automatically.

### Front courtesy light





-  : automatic switching on and off
- press  : on
- press  : off

## Rear courtesy lights

Illuminate in conjunction with the front courtesy light.

## Reading lights



Operated by pressing  and  in the courtesy lights.

## Sun visor lights

Illuminates when the cover is opened.

## Lighting features

### Centre console lighting

A spotlight integrated in the overhead console illuminates the centre console when headlights are switched on.

### Entry lighting

#### Welcome lighting

Some or all of the following lights are switched on for a short time by unlocking the vehicle:

- headlights
- tail lights
- number plate lights
- centre console lighting
- interior lights

The number of activated lights depends on the surrounding light conditions.

The lighting switches off immediately when the ignition is switched on.

This function can be activated or deactivated in the vehicle personalisation.

Vehicle personalisation ⇨ 83.

The following lights will additionally switch on when the driver's door is opened:

- illumination of some switches
- Driver Information Centre
- door pocket lights

### Exit lighting

The following lights are switched on if the ignition is switched off:

- interior lights
- centre console lighting

They will switch off automatically after a delay. This function works only in the dark.

## Battery discharge protection

### Vehicle battery state of charge function

The function guarantees longest vehicle battery life via a generator with controllable power output and optimised power distribution.

To prevent discharge of the vehicle battery when driving, the following systems are reduced automatically in two stages and finally switched off:

- auxiliary heater
- heated rear window and heated mirrors
- heated seats
- fan

In the second stage, a message which confirms the activation of the vehicle battery discharge protection will be displayed in the Driver Information Centre.



---

### Switching off interior lights

To prevent discharge of the vehicle battery when the ignition is switched off, some interior lights are switched off automatically after some time.

## Infotainment system

<b>Multimedia Navi Pro</b> .....	<b>96</b>
Audio .....	109
External devices .....	112
Navigation .....	115
Speech recognition .....	126
Phone .....	128
<b>Multimedia</b> .....	<b>133</b>
Audio .....	143
External devices .....	147
Speech recognition .....	152
Phone .....	153

## Multimedia Navi Pro

### Introduction

#### Important information on operation and traffic safety

##### Warning

Drive safely at all times. Only operate the Infotainment system if the traffic conditions allow a safe usage.

In the interest of safety, it might be appropriate to stop the vehicle before operating the Infotainment system (e.g. for entries of addresses).

##### Warning

The usage of the navigation system does not release the driver from the responsibility for a correct, vigilant attitude in road traffic. Always follow the applicable traffic rules.

##### Warning

In some areas one-way streets and other roads and entrances (e.g. pedestrian zones) that you are not allowed to turn into are not marked on the map. In such areas the Infotainment system may issue a warning that must be accepted. Here you must pay particular attention to one-way streets, roads and entrances that you are not allowed to drive into.

#### Radio reception

Radio reception may be disrupted by static, noise, distortion or loss of reception due to:

- changes in distance from the transmitter
- multi-path reception due to reflection
- shadowing

#### Theft-deterrent feature

The Infotainment system is equipped with an electronic security system for the purpose of theft deterrence.



---




The Infotainment system therefore functions only in your vehicle and is worthless to a thief.

## Multimedia Navi Pro

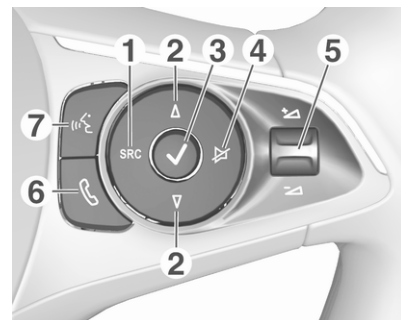
### Control panel





- 1 Info Display / touchscreen with home menu (home menu only visible after 3-finger touch on screen)
- 2 **AUDIO**  
Open audio menu:  
Radio ..... 109  
External devices (USB, Bluetooth) ..... 112  
CD player ..... 112
- 3 **NAV**  
Display embedded navigation map ..... 115
- 4   
Open phone menu ..... 128  
Display phone projection screen when phone projection is active ..... 112
- 5   
If switched off: switch power on / off  
If switched on: mute system  
Turn: adjust volume

- 6 **SET** /   
Open settings menu  
or open charging settings (hybrid vehicles)
- 7   
Open apps menu ..... 112
- 8   
Open vehicle settings menu . 83

### Steering wheel controls



- 1 **SRC** (Source)  
Select audio source, confirm selection with   
Long press: mute system
- 2   
Select next / previous preset radio station when radio active ..... 109  
or select next / previous track / picture when external devices active ..... 112

or select next / previous entry in station list, media list, call / contacts list when operation started via steering wheel controls

Confirm selection with ✓

3 ✓

Confirm selected item

or open station list, media list

4 ✕

Activate / deactivate mute function

5 + / -

Turn upwards / downwards: increase / decrease volume

6 ☎

Short press: accept incoming call

Long press: reject incoming call, hang up call .. 128

or open call / contacts list ... 128

If phone call active: open call in progress menu

7 

Short press: activate embedded speech recognition

Long press: activate speech recognition in Apple CarPlay™ or Android™ Auto if phone connected via USB port ..... 126


## Control elements

The Infotainment system is operated via function buttons, a touchscreen and menus that are shown on the display.

Inputs are made optionally via:

- the control panel on the Infotainment system
- the touchscreen
- the steering wheel controls
- the speech recognition ⇨ 126


## Switching the Infotainment system on or off

Press . After switching on, the last selected Infotainment source becomes active.


### Notice

Some functions of the Infotainment system are only available if ignition is switched on or engine is running.

### Automatic switch-off

If the Infotainment system has been switched on pressing  while the ignition is switched off, it will switch off again automatically when the Eco mode becomes active.

### Setting the volume


Turn . The current setting is shown on the display.


When the Infotainment system is switched on, the last selected volume is set.

### Speed compensated volume

When the speed compensated volume is activated, the volume is adapted automatically to make up for the road and wind noise as you drive.

### Mute

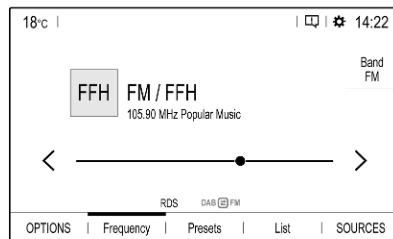
Press  to mute the Infotainment system.

To cancel the mute function, press  again. The last selected volume is set again.

## Modes of operation

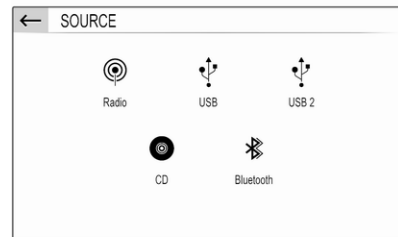
### Audio-Media

Press **AUDIO** to display the main menu of the last selected audio mode.



### Changing the media source

Select **SOURCES** to display the menu for media source selection.



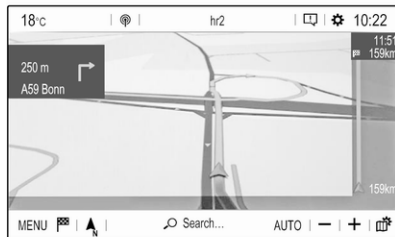
Select the desired media source.

For a detailed description of:

- Radio functions ⇨ 109
- CD player ⇨ 112
- External devices ⇨ 112

### Navigation

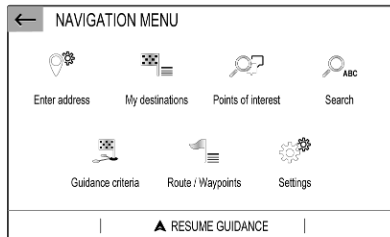
Press **NAV** to display the navigation map showing the area around the current location.



For a detailed description of basic functions of the navigation system ⇨ 115.

### Navigation menu

Select **MENU** to display the navigation menu.



The navigation menu serves as central entry point for:


- Address search and input
- Defining trips with several waypoints
- Defining criteria for route guidance
- Cancelling and resuming route guidance

For a detailed description of basic functions of the navigation system ⇨ 115.

### Phone

Before the phone function can be used, a connection has to be established between the Infotainment system and the mobile phone.

For a detailed description of preparing and establishing a Bluetooth connection between the Infotainment system and a mobile phone ⇨ 128.


If the mobile phone is connected, press  to display the main menu of the phone function.






For a detailed description of mobile phone operation via the Infotainment system ⇨ 128.



### Network and connected services

Press  and then select **OPTIONS** to display the Bluetooth, network and connected services settings.


To connect the vehicle to a Wi-Fi network, touch . A list of all available Wi-Fi networks is displayed. It is also possible to share the Wi-Fi connection for other devices.

To update the service and connection status, go to the menu for connected services  and touch .

To use the connected services, make sure that data sharing and the vehicle position are activated in the privacy menu in the **System settings**.

### Apps


To show specific apps of your smartphone on the display of the Infotainment system, connect your smartphone.

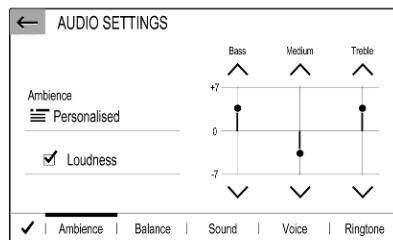
Press  to display the main menu of the apps mode.

Touch **Apple CarPlay** or **Android Auto**. A menu with different selectable apps is displayed.


For a detailed description ⇨ 112.

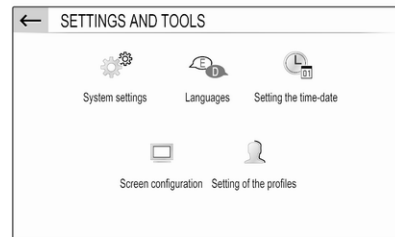
### Settings

Press **SET** /  and then select **Audio settings** to display the respective menu.




For a detailed description.

Press **SET** /  and then **OPTIONS** to display a menu for various system-related settings.



For a detailed description ⇨ 128.

### Vehicle settings

Select  to open a menu for various vehicle-related settings.

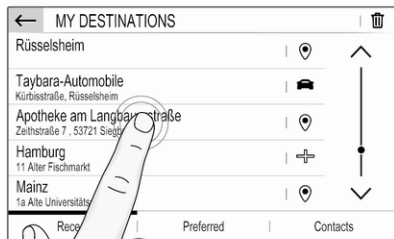
Vehicle Personalisation ⇨ 83

### Menu operation

The display of the Infotainment system has a touch-sensitive surface that allows direct interaction with the displayed menu controls.



**Caution**

Do not use pointed or hard items like ballpoint pens, pencils or similar for touchscreen operation.

**Selecting or activating a screen button or menu item**

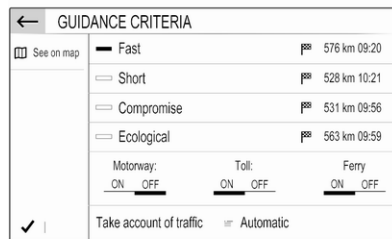
Touch a screen button or menu item.

**Notice**

Most icons displayed in a menu, like  or  in the illustrated example, serve as screen buttons that initiate certain actions if you touch them.

The corresponding system function is activated, a message is shown, or a submenu with further options is displayed.

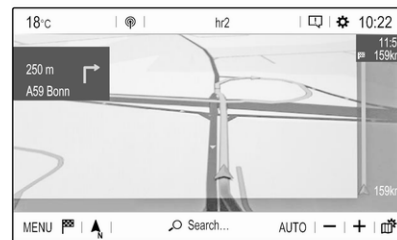
← and ✓ screen buttons



When operating the menus, touch ← in the respective submenu to return to the next higher menu level.

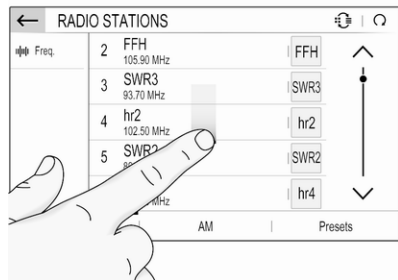
When no ← screen button is displayed, you are on the top level of the respective menu.

After selecting menu items or performing settings in a menu, touch ✓ to confirm your settings. Otherwise all performed selections or settings will be lost.

**Shortcuts to important menus**

The texts and icons displayed in the top bar, of e.g. the navigation main menu, serve as shortcuts to some important menus. For example, touch the station name to open the station list menu.

## Scrolling a list



If there are more items available than presentable on the screen, the list must be scrolled.

To scroll through a list of menu items, you may optionally:

- Place your finger anywhere on the screen and move it upwards or downwards.

### Notice

Constant pressure must be applied and the finger must be moved at a constant speed.

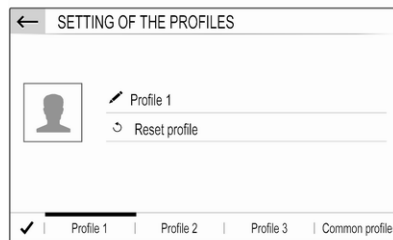
- Touch  $\wedge$  or  $\vee$  at the top or bottom of the scroll bar.

- Touch anywhere on the guiding line of the scroll bar.
- Move the slider of the scroll bar up and down with your finger.

## Updating a list

Touch  $\mathcal{O}$  to manually update, e.g., station lists, contacts lists or destination lists.

## Input fields and keyboards

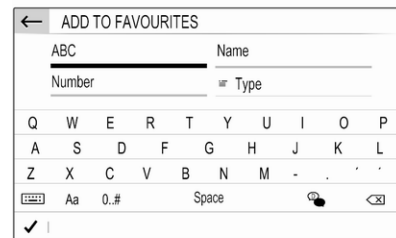


Input fields are indicated by  $\text{✎}$ .

Touch the input field to open a keyboard for text or number input.

Depending on the application or function currently active, different keyboards are displayed.

## Keyboards for text input




Keyboards for text input may contain several input fields. To enable a field for text input, touch it.


To enter a character, touch the respective screen button. The character is entered upon release.


Touch and hold a letter screen button to display associated letters in a letter pop-up menu. Release and then select the desired letter.

To switch to the symbol keyboard, touch **0..#**.


To switch back to the letter keyboard or to switch between capital and small letters, touch **Aa**.

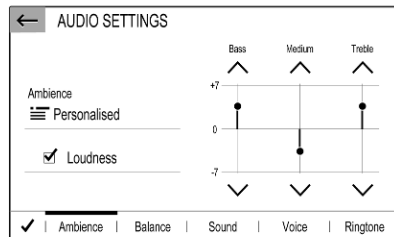
To switch the letter keyboard between normal order and alphabetical order, touch .

To delete the most recently entered character or symbol, touch .

To delete a character or symbol at any point of your input: touch at the desired point to place a blinking cursor, then touch .

## Audio settings

Press **SET** / , select **Audio settings** and then select the **Ambience** tab.



Several predefined settings are available to optimise the tone for a specific style of music (e.g. **Pop-Rock** or **Classical**).

To adjust the tone individually, select **User** or **Personalised**. Change the settings as desired and then confirm your settings.

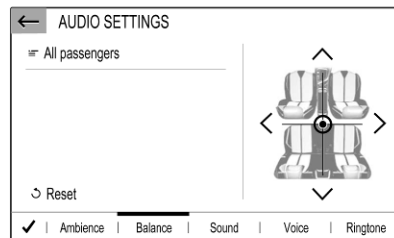
### Notice

If you change the settings of a predefined setting, e.g. **Pop-Rock**, this settings will be applied to the **User** or **Personalised** setting.

Activating the **Loudness** function may optimise the tone at low volume levels.

## Balance and fader

Select the **Balance** tab.



Several predefined settings are available to adjust the volume distribution inside the vehicle (e.g. **All passengers** or **Front only**).

To change the current setting, e.g. **All passengers**, select that setting and then select the desired new setting from the displayed list.

You may individually adjust the predefined settings.

To define the point in the passenger compartment where the volume is at its highest level, move the cursor in the illustration on the right side of the screen to the desired point.

To return to the default factory settings, select ↶.

## Volume settings

Press **SET** / ⚙️, select **Audio settings** and then select the **Sound** tab.

## Audible touch feedback

If the audible touch feedback function is activated, each touch of a screen button or menu item is indicated by a beeping sound.

To adjust the touch beep volume, activate **Touch tones** and then adjust the setting.

## Speed compensated volume

Activate or deactivate **Volume linked to speed**.

If activated, the volume of the Infotainment system is adapted automatically to make up for the road and wind noise as you drive.

## Speech output

Select the **Voice** tab.

Adjust the volume for all speech outputs of the system, e.g. traffic announcements, navigation messages etc.

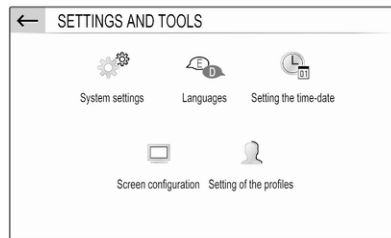
## Ringtone

Select the **Ringtone** tab.

Adjust the ringtone volume of incoming calls.

## System settings

Press **SET** / ⚙️ and then select **OPTIONS**.



## Configuring the system

Select **System settings** to perform some basic system configurations, e.g.:

- Adjust the display of units for temperature or fuel consumption.
- Reset the system configuration to factory defaults.
- Update the installed software version.
- Adjust the privacy settings for data sharing and vehicle position.

## Changing display language

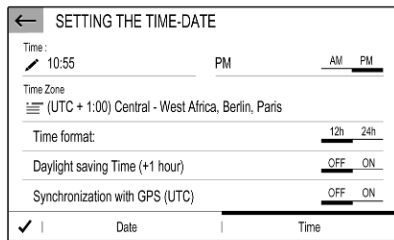
To adjust the language for the menu texts, select **Languages** and then select the desired language.

## Notice

If the selected display language is supported by the embedded speech recognition, the language of the speech recognition will be changed accordingly; if not, embedded speech recognition will be not available.

## Adjusting time and date

Select **Setting the time-date**.



### Changing time and date formats

To change the time and date formats, select the respective tabs and then select the desired formats.

### Setting time and date

By default the displayed time and date is automatically adjusted by the system.

To manually adjust the displayed time and date:

Select the **Time** tab.

Set **Synchronization with GPS (UTC)** to **OFF** and then select the **Time** field to set the desired time.

Select the **Date** tab and then select the **Date:** field to set the desired date.

### Adjusting the screen

Select **Screen configuration**.

### Text scroll function

Select the **Animation** tab.

If long texts on the screen should be scrolled automatically, activate **Automatic scrolling**.

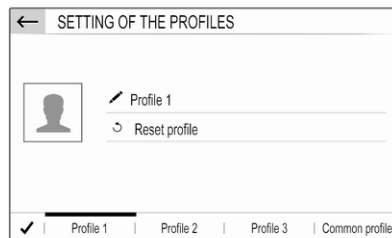
If **Automatic scrolling** is deactivated, long texts are truncated.

### Adjusting the brightness

Select **Brightness** and set the brightness of the screen to the desired level.

### Storing your personal settings

Select **Setting of the profiles**.



You can store a multitude of settings in a personal profile. For example, all current tone settings, all radio presets, one phone book, the map settings and your preferred addresses.

In case you share the vehicle with other people, this enables you to restore your personal settings from your profile at any time.


A maximum of three personal profiles may be stored.

Additionally, a **Common profile** is available. All settings done at any time are automatically stored in that profile. If no personal profile is activated, the **Common profile** is active.

### Storing your personal profile

After performing all your personal settings:

Select one of the personal profile tabs.

Select the input field  and enter the desired name of your personal profile.

If you want to add a photo to the profile:

Connect a USB device with the desired photo stored on it to the USB port ↗ 112, touch the photo frame and then select the desired photo.

Confirm your selection to download the selected photo to the system.

Finally, confirm your inputs to store them in your personal profile.

### Activating your personal profile

Press **⚙** and then select the tab with the name of your personal profile.

### Activating the Common profile

If a personal profile is currently active:

Press **⚙** and then select **Deactivate profile**.

### Resetting a personal profile

You can at any time reset a personal profile to restore the default factory settings on that profile.

Select the respective profile and then select **Reset profile**.

### Resetting the Common profile

You can at any time reset the **Common profile** to restore the default factory settings on that profile.

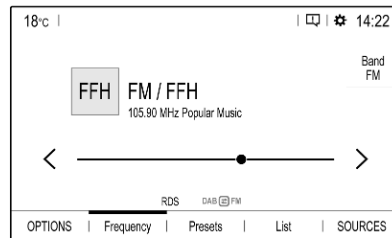
Select **Common profile** and then select **Reset the common profile**.

## Audio

### Activating the radio

Press **AUDIO**. The audio main menu last selected is displayed.

If the radio main menu is not active, select **SOURCES** and then select **Radio**.



The station last played will be received.

### Selecting a waveband

Repeatedly select **Band** to toggle between the different wavebands.

## Searching for stations

### Automatic station search

Briefly touch **<** or **>** to play the previous or next receivable station.

### Manual station search

Press and hold **<** or **>**. Release when the required frequency has almost been reached.

A search is made for the next station that can be received and it is played automatically.

### Station tuning

If you exactly know the reception frequency of a radio station, you may enter that frequency manually.

Select **OPTIONS**, select **Radio stations** and then select the desired waveband.

Select **Freq.**, enter the reception frequency and confirm your input.

If a station is receivable on that frequency, the respective station is played.

## Station lists

In the station lists, all receivable radio stations within the current reception area are available for selection.

To display the station list of the waveband currently active, select **List**.

Select the desired station.

## Update station lists

If the stations stored in the waveband-specific station list can no longer be received, the AM and the DAB station lists must be updated. The FM station list is updated automatically.

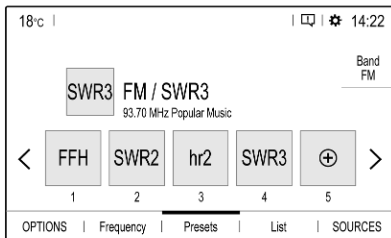
Select **OPTIONS**, select **Radio stations** and then select the desired waveband.

To start an update for the selected waveband, select .

## Storing favourite stations

Up to 15 radio stations of all wavebands can be stored as favourites in the **Presets** list.

Select **Presets** to display the preset buttons.



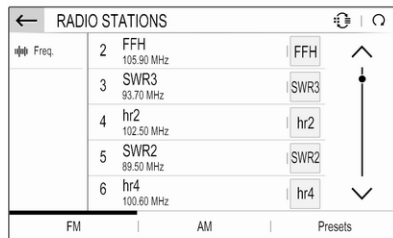
## Storing the currently active station



Touch and hold the desired button for a few seconds. The respective frequency or station name is displayed on the button.

If a station is already stored on a preset button, that station will be overwritten by the new one.

## Storing a station from a station list

Select **OPTIONS**, select **Radio stations** and then select the desired waveband.



Briefly touch the button next to the desired station. Alternatively, select  to switch to the tiled view. Then briefly touch  on the tile of the desired station.

Select **Add to favourites** and then touch and hold for a few seconds on the list row where you want to store the station.

If a station is already stored on a list row, that station will be overwritten by the new one.

## Retrieving stations

In the radio main menu select **Presets** and then briefly touch the preset button of the desired station.



## RDS configuration

In the radio main menu select **OPTIONS** and then select **Radio settings** to open the menu for RDS configuration.

### Activating RDS

Select **General** and then activate **Alternative frequency**.

If **Alternative frequency** is activated, **RDS** is displayed in the bottom line of the radio main menu.

### Radio text

If RDS is activated, information on the radio programme currently active or the music track currently playing are displayed below the programme name.

To show or hide the information, activate or deactivate **Display radio text**.

### Traffic announcements

Many RDS stations broadcast traffic news. If the traffic announcements function is activated, radio or media playback is interrupted for the duration of a traffic announcement.

Select **Announcements** and then activate or deactivate **Traffic announcement**.

If **Traffic announcement** is activated, **TA** is displayed in the bottom line of the radio main menu.

### Digital audio broadcasting

Digital audio broadcasting (DAB) broadcasts radio stations digitally.

DAB stations are indicated by the programme name instead of the broadcasting frequency.

### DAB Announcements

Besides their music programmes, a lot of DAB stations also broadcast announcements of various categories. If you activate some or all categories, the currently received DAB service is interrupted when an announcement of these categories is made.

In the radio main menu select **OPTIONS**, select **Radio settings** and then select **Announcements**.

Activate the desired announcement categories, e.g., **News** or **Weather**. Different announcement categories can be selected at the same time.

### FM-DAB Linking

This function enables switching from an FM station to a corresponding DAB station and vice versa.

Switching from FM to DAB occurs as soon as a corresponding DAB station is available. Therefore, it is recommended to store favourite stations as DAB stations to reduce frequent switching.

Switching from DAB to FM occurs if the signal is too weak to be picked up by the receiver.

### Activation

Precondition is that **Alternative frequency** is activated before FM-DAB Linking can be activated.

To activate FM-DAB Linking, go to **OPTIONS** ➔ **Radio settings** ➔ **General** and select **FM-DAB Follow-up**.

The following symbol will be displayed when FM-DAB Linking is activated:



### Deactivation

To deactivate FM-DAB Linking, go to **OPTIONS** ➤ **Radio settings** ➤ **General** and deselect **FM-DAB Follow-up**.

FM-DAB Linking will automatically be deactivated when **Alternative frequency** is deactivated.

## External devices

### CD player

A CD player for the playback of audio CDs and MP3 CDs is located in the glovebox.

### Caution

Under no circumstances place DVDs, single-CDs with a diameter of 8 cm or shaped CDs in the audio player.

You must not put any stickers on CDs. These discs can get jammed in the CD drive and ruin the player. Replacement of the device will then be necessary.

### Starting CD playback

Push an audio or MP3 CD with the labelled side facing upwards into the CD slot until it is pulled in.

CD playback starts automatically and the CD main menu is displayed.

If a CD is already inserted, but the CD main menu is not active:

Press **AUDIO**, select **SOURCES** and then select **CD**.

CD playback is started.

### Operation

For a detailed description of playback functions for music tracks.

### Removing a CD

Press **▲**. The CD is pushed out of the CD slot.

If the CD is not removed after ejection, it will be drawn back in after a few seconds.

### USB ports

One or two USB ports are located in the front centre console. Another USB port may be located in the rear console.

### Caution

To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

### Notice

The USB ports must always be kept clean and dry.

An MP3 player, USB device, SD card (via USB connector / adapter) or smartphone can be connected to each USB port.


The Infotainment system can play audio files or show picture files contained in USB devices.

When connected to a USB port, various functions of the devices mentioned above can be operated via the controls and menus of the Infotainment system.

#### Notice

Not all auxiliary devices are supported by the Infotainment system.

#### Notice

If two USB ports are available in the front centre console: To use the phone projection feature of the Infotainment system, you need to connect your smartphone to the USB port labelled with .

### Connecting / disconnecting a device

Connect one of the devices mentioned above to a USB port. If required, use the appropriate connection cable. The music function starts automatically.

#### Notice

If a non-readable USB device is connected, a corresponding error message appears and the Infotainment system automatically switches to the previous function.


To disconnect a USB device, select another function and then remove the USB device.

### Caution

Avoid disconnecting the device during playback. This may damage the device or the Infotainment system.

### Bluetooth audio streaming

Streaming allows you to listen to music from your smartphone.

For a detailed description on how to establish a Bluetooth connection  128.

If audio playback does not start automatically, it may be necessary to start the playback on the smartphone.

First adjust the volume on your smartphone (to a high level). Then adjust the volume of Infotainment system.

### File formats

The audio equipment supports different file formats.

### Activating the music function

Connecting the USB or Bluetooth device.

If device already connected, but playback of stored music files not active:



Press **AUDIO**, select **SOURCES** and then select the respective source.

Playback of the audio tracks starts automatically.



### Playback functions

#### Interrupting and resuming playback

Touch  to interrupt playback. The screen button changes to .

Touch ► to resume playback.

### Playing the previous or next track

Touch < or >.


### Fast forwarding and rewinding


Touch and hold < or >. Release to return to normal playback mode.


Alternatively, you can move the slider showing the current track position to the left or right.

### Playing tracks randomly

Touch button repeatedly to toggle between the available random modes.

: play tracks of currently selected list (album, artist, etc.) in random order.


: play all tracks stored on connected device in random order.

: play tracks of currently selected list (album, artist, etc.) in normal playback mode.

### Repeating tracks

Touch button repeatedly to switch repeat mode on or off.

: repeat tracks of currently selected list (album, artist, etc.).

: play tracks of currently selected list (album, artist, etc.) in normal playback mode.

### Browse music functions

(only available for devices connected via USB)

You can have your music files sorted according to different criteria. Two options are available for browsing the music files stored on the connected USB device.

#### Browsing via main menu

If you want to change the currently active USB source, select **SOURCES** and then select the desired source. The respective main menu is displayed.

Select the button showing the currently selected sorting criteria, e.g. **Sort: Album** or **Sort: Artist**, and then select the desired new sorting criteria. A sorting process is performed.

Select **List** and then select the desired track.

Playback of the selected track is started.

### Browsing via device menu

Select **OPTIONS** and then select **Music files**.

If you want to change the currently active USB source, select **Other**.

Select the desired sorting criteria, e.g. **Albums** or **Artists**, and then select the desired track.

Playback of the selected track is started.

### Activating the picture viewer

Connecting the USB device.

If device already connected, but picture viewer not active:

Press **AUDIO**, select **OPTIONS** and then select **Managing photos**.

Select the desired picture.

A slide show of all stored picture files starts automatically.



Touch the screen to display the menu bar.

### Viewing the previous or next picture

Touch ◀◀ or ▶▶.

### Starting or stopping a slide show

Select ▶ to view the pictures stored on the USB device in a slide show.

Touch || to end the slide show.

### Phone projection

The phone projection applications Apple CarPlay and Android Auto display selected apps from your

smartphone on the Info Display and allow their operation directly via the Infotainment controls.

Check with the device's manufacturer if this function is compatible with your smartphone and if this application is available in the country you are in.

#### Preparing the smartphone

**iPhone®:** Make sure Siri® is activated on your phone.

**Android phone:** Download the Android Auto app to your phone from the Google Play™ Store.

#### Connecting the smartphone

##### iPhone


Connect the phone to the USB port.

If the phone is already connected via Bluetooth, upon connecting to the USB port and launching Apple CarPlay, the Bluetooth connection will disconnect.

##### Android phone

Connect the phone via Bluetooth  
 ⇨ 128 and then connect the phone to the USB port.

#### Starting phone projection

Press  and then touch **Apple CarPlay** or **Android Auto**.

The phone projection screen displayed depends on your smartphone and software version.

#### Returning to the Infotainment screen

Press, e.g., the **AUDIO** button on the control panel.

### Navigation

This chapter is about the embedded navigation system which guides to desired destinations.

The current traffic situation is taken into account in the route calculation. For this purpose, the Infotainment system receives traffic announcements in the current reception area via RDS-TMC.

The navigation system cannot, however, take into account traffic incidents, traffic regulations changed at short notice and hazards or problems that arise suddenly (e.g. road works).

**Caution**

The usage of the navigation system does not release the driver from the responsibility for a correct, vigilant attitude in road traffic. The relevant traffic regulations must always be followed. If a navigation instruction contradicts traffic regulations, the traffic regulations always apply.

**Functioning of the navigation system**

The position and movement of the vehicle are detected by the navigation system using sensors. The travelled distance is determined by the vehicle's speedometer signal, turning movements on bends by a sensor. The position is determined by the GPS (Global Positioning System) satellites.

By comparing the sensor signals with the digital maps, it is possible to determine the position with an accuracy of approx. 10 m.

The system will also work with poor GPS reception. However, the accuracy of the determination of the position will be reduced.

After the entry of the destination address or point of interest (nearest petrol station, hotel, etc.), the route is calculated from the current location to the destination selected.

Route guidance is provided by voice output and an arrow, as well as with the aid of a multi-colour map display.

**Important information****TMC traffic information system and dynamic route guidance**

The TMC traffic information system receives all current traffic information from TMC radio stations. This information is included in the calculation of the overall route. During this process, the route is planned so that traffic problems related to pre-selected criteria are avoided.

To be able to use TMC traffic information, the system must receive TMC stations in the relevant region.

**Live navigation**

When data sharing and the vehicle position are activated, the navigation system will show online traffic information as well as online information for parking, fuel prices and weather. The services can be stopped at anytime by deactivating data sharing and the vehicle position.

Data sharing and the vehicle position can be activated or deactivated via the privacy menu in the **System settings**.

Network and connected services  
 ⇨ 96.

The privacy menu and the menu for connected services are also accessible via the message icon on the screen.

**Map data**

All required map data is stored within the Infotainment system.

Map updates are available at a Vauxhall Service Partner or at the MyVauxhall customer portal. To download the map updates from the Vauxhall customer portal, a MyVauxhall account and a USB stick

with at least 16 GB memory and FAT 32 / MBR formatting are necessary.

Download and save the map data on a computer and unpack the data onto the USB stick.

To update the map data in the Infotainment system, connect the USB stick to the Infotainment system, select the navigation function and follow the steps on the Info Display.

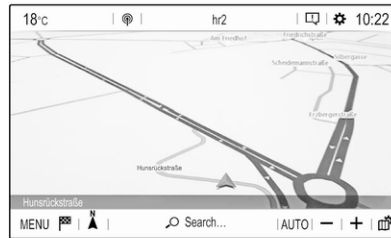
The installation of the map update will take up to 1 hour. Do not switch off the engine during the installation process.

Some functions of the Infotainment system, e.g. the navigation function, are not available during the installation process.

### Information on the map display

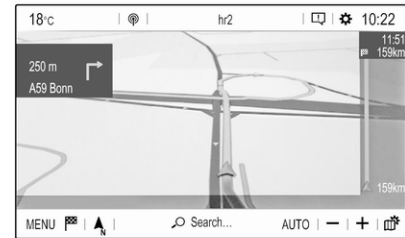
Press **NAV** to display the navigation map showing the area around the current location.

### Route guidance not active



- The map view is displayed.
- The current location is indicated by an arrow.
- The name of the street you are currently in is displayed at the bottom left of the map view.
- Public charging stations are indicated (electric vehicles).

### Route guidance active



- The map view is displayed.
- The active route is indicated by a coloured line.
- The moving vehicle is marked by an arrow pointing into the direction of travel.
- The next turning manoeuvre is shown in a separate field at the top left of the map view.

Depending on the situation information on lane guidance or the second next turning

manoeuvre may be displayed additionally.

- The arrival time and the remaining distance to the destination is shown at the top right of the map view.

## Customise the map display

### Map views

Different map views are available.

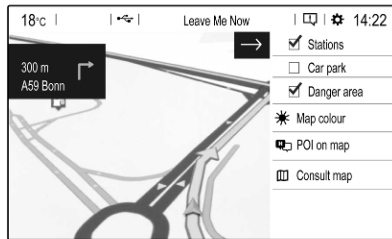
Touch ▲ to toggle between the different map views.

Depending on the map view, the remaining range is displayed as a circle (electric vehicles).

### Map colours

Depending on the external lighting conditions, the colouring of the map screen (light colours for the day and dark colours for the night) can be adapted.

Touch ☰ to display a menu on the right side of the screen.



Select **Map colour** repeatedly to toggle between light and dark colours.

### POI (Points of Interest) icons on the map

POIs are points of general interest, e.g. petrol stations or car parks.

The display of POI categories shown on the map may be personally adapted.

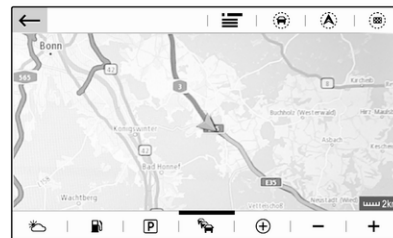
Activate the desired POI categories. The map view changes accordingly.

Alternatively, select **POI on map** to display a menu with a multitude of POI categories and subcategories to choose from. Activate the desired POI categories.

### Traffic events


Traffic events may be indicated on the map. Additionally, information on these events may be displayed in a list.

Select **Consult map** to switch to an alternative map display with new menu options.




The map view is switched to **North orientation** mode and may display a greater part of the route.




Touch the traffic jam icon to show traffic events on the map. Touch  to show a list with information on these traffic events.


Touch the charging station icon to display a circle that indicates the remaining range (electric vehicles).

If you want to display a different map section:

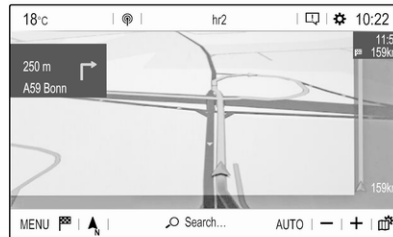
Touch  to show the area around the current location.

Touch  to show the entire route.

Touch  to show the area around the destination.

To return to the default navigation view, touch .

## Autozoom function



If the autozoom function is activated (**AUTO** is displayed below the map view), the zoom level changes automatically when approaching a turning manoeuvre during active route guidance. This way, you always get a good overview of the respective manoeuvre.

If the autozoom function is deactivated, the selected zoom level remains the same during the whole route guidance process.

To activate or deactivate the function:

Select **MENU**, select **Settings** and then select the **Aspect** tab.

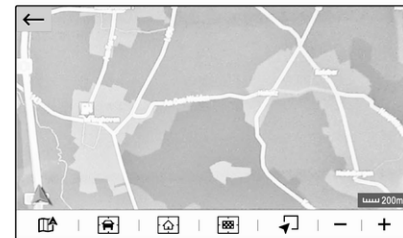
Activate or deactivate **Automatic zoom setting**.


## Map manipulation


### Moving visible map section



Place your finger anywhere on the screen and move it in the desired direction.

The map moves accordingly, displaying a new section. A new button bar is shown.




: show area around current location again.

: show area around home address.

: show area around destination.  
To return to the default navigation view, select .


### Centring visible map section

Touch the desired location on the screen to centre the map around this location.


A red  is displayed at the respective location and the corresponding address is shown on a label.

### Manual zooming



To zoom in on a selected map location, place two fingers on the screen and move them away from each other.

Alternatively, touch  below the map view.

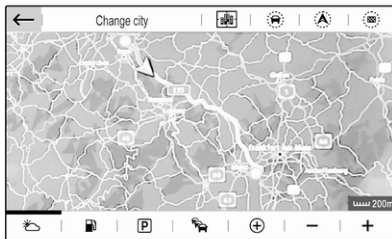
To zoom out and display a larger area around the selected location, place two fingers on the screen and move them towards each other.


Alternatively, touch  below the map view.

### Showing an overview of the route

Touch , select **Consult map** and then touch .

The map view is switched to **North orientation** and shows an overview of the current route.



To return to the default navigation view, touch .

### Voice guidance

The route guidance process can be supported by voice prompts given out by the system.

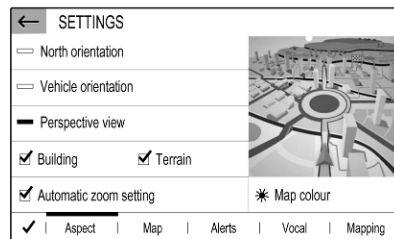
To activate or deactivate the function:

Select **MENU** in the navigation main menu, select **Settings** and then select the **Vocal** tab.

Activate or deactivate **Activate navigation messages**.

### Navigation settings


Select **MENU** in the navigation main menu, and then select **Settings** to display the respective menu with a variety of navigation related settings.



Please explore the different settings. Some have already been described above, others are described in the following sections.

## Selecting an address from the map

Touch the desired location on the map. The map centres around this location.

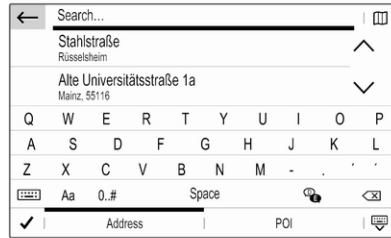
A red  is displayed at the respective location and the corresponding address is shown on a label.

To start route guidance, select .



For a detailed description on route guidance.

## Quick address or POI search

Select **Search...** A menu with a list of recent destinations and a keyboard is displayed.



To refine the area for your address or POI search, select  and then select the desired option.

To hide the keyboard and show the entire list, select . To show the keyboard again, select .

If you want to search for POIs (Points of Interest) only, select the **POI** tab.

Enter an address or search term. As soon as characters are entered an address search is performed and the list of found addresses is updated continuously.

Select the desired list item.

Depending on the current situation and your selection, the navigation system may react differently:

- If the selected list item is a valid destination address and route guidance is currently not active:

The navigation main menu is displayed again and route guidance is started.

For a detailed description on route guidance.

- If the selected list item is a valid destination address but route guidance is already active:

A message is displayed and you need to decide first if the old destination should be replaced, or if you want to add the selected address as an intermediate destination to a waypoint trip. Detailed description on waypoint trips, see below.

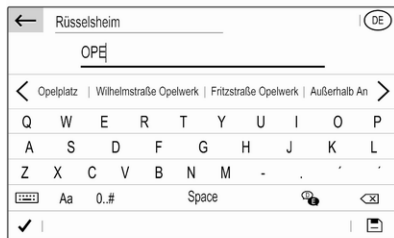
Select the desired option.

- If the navigation system needs more detailed information for route calculation:

Enter a further search term to refine your search.

## Detailed address entry

Select **MENU** and then select **Enter address** to display a keyboard for address entry.



As soon as characters are entered, an address search is started. Every additional character is considered in the matching process and a list of matching addresses is displayed.

Select the desired address or change your input to initiate a new search.

Continue with the address entry until the entire address you are searching for is found.

## Notice

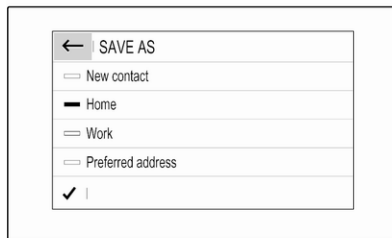
Make sure that the correct country is selected. To change the country, touch the country code in the upper right corner.

To start route guidance to the respective address, confirm your input.

For a detailed description on route guidance.

## Storing your favourite addresses

If you want to store the entered address, select .



You may store the address as, e.g., your **Home** address or your **Work** address.

Select the desired option, confirm your selection and then enter a name for the address.

The stored address can then be easily selected as destination address via the destination lists **Preferred** or **Contacts**, see below.

## Destination lists

Select **MENU** and then select **My destinations**.



Select **Recent** to display a list of all recently entered destinations.

Select **Preferred** to display all destinations which were stored before as home address, work address or preferred address.

Select **Contacts** to display a list with contact names and all related addresses stored before as personal contacts.

To start route guidance to the respective address, select a list entry. For a detailed description on route guidance.

## Points of interest


A point of interest (POI) is a specific location that might be of general interest, e.g. a petrol station, a parking area or a restaurant.

The data stored within the navigation system contains a great number of predefined POIs, which are indicated on the map (if activated).

### Selecting a POI from the map

Touch the desired POI icon on the map. The map centres around this location.

Touch the icon again.


A red  is displayed at the respective location and the corresponding address is shown on a label.

To start route guidance, select .

For a detailed description on route guidance.

### Showing a list of POIs around a location

Touch the desired location on the map. The map centres around this location.

A red  is displayed at the respective location and the corresponding address is shown on a label.

Touch and hold .

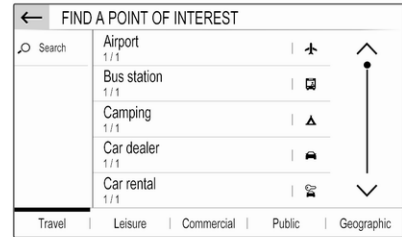
A list of POIs around the location is displayed.

Select the desired POI to start route guidance.

For a detailed description on route guidance.

### Searching for POIs via categories

Select **MENU** and then select **Points of interest**.



Select a POI main category, e.g., **Travel** and then select a subcategory, e.g. **Airport**. A new menu is displayed.

Select a search area, e.g., **Around the vehicle** to refine the search.

After the POI search is performed, select the desired POI.

To search for POIs at another location, select **Address**.

To search for POIs via keyword (see below), select **Search**.

### Searching via keyword

Select **MENU**, select **Search**, enter a keyword, e.g., "Station", enter or select a city name and confirm your input.

After the POI search is performed, select the desired POI.

### Waypoint trips

A waypoint is an intermediate destination that is considered in the calculation of a route to its final destination. To create a waypoint trip, you may add one or several waypoints.

Enter or select the final destination of your waypoint trip and start route guidance.

While under active route guidance, select **MENU** and then select **Route / Waypoints**.

ROUTE AND WAYPOINTS		↓↑
Add waypoint	BNU Bonn-Hangelar 128 Richthofenstraße, Hangelar	1
Overview	CGN Köln Bonn Airport: Terminal 2 Kennedystraße, Grengel	2
Finish	Rüsselsheim Stahlstraße	888
Waypoints		Route

Select **Add waypoint** and then select an option for address entry, e.g. **Find POI**.

Enter or select a new address. The address is inserted into the list of waypoints.

If desired, enter further waypoints as described above.

If you want to change the order of the waypoints:

Touch ↓↑ and then touch the displayed arrows to move the list entries up or down.

Select **Calculate** to recalculate the route according to the changed order.

To return to the navigation main menu, select **Finish**.

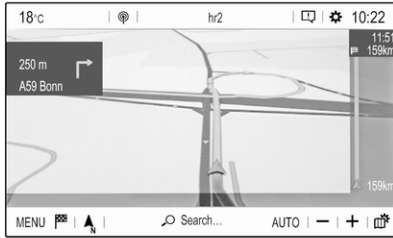
To display a detailed route list of the waypoint trip, select the **Route** tab.

ROUTE AND WAYPOINTS			↑
Add waypoint	60 Alexanderstraße Turn right	↗	↑ ↓
Overview	400 B1/B5 Alexanderstraße Turn right	↗	
Finish	8 Wexstraße, Tegel Turn right	↗	
	8 A100, Magdeburg Bear left	↙	
	9 A100 km	↑	↓
Waypoints		Route	

### Route guidance

#### Visual instructions

Visual instructions are provided on the display.



### Notice

When route guidance is active and you are not within the navigation application, turning manoeuvres are shown on the instrument cluster display.

### Voice guidance

Navigation voice prompts announce which direction to follow, when approaching an intersection at which you need to turn.

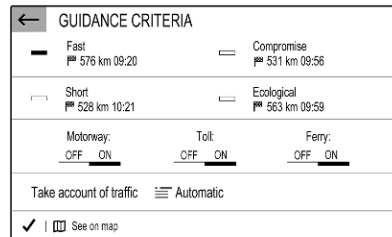
To activate or deactivate the voice prompts function select **MENU** in the navigation main menu, select **Settings**, select the **Vocal** tab and then activate or deactivate **Activate navigation messages**.

If voice prompts are activated you can additionally specify whether street names should be spoken or not.

To replay the last voice guidance instruction, touch the turn arrow on the left side of the screen.

### Settings for route guidance

Select **MENU** in the navigation main menu and then select **Guidance criteria** to display the respective menu.



When the menu is opened, several optional routes are automatically calculated by the navigation system, e.g. the fastest route or the most ecological route.

To show the different optional routes on a map, select **See on map**.

If you want, e.g., avoid motorways on your route, set the respective option to **OFF**.

### Take account of traffic

Traffic events are taken into consideration when the system determines a route to a destination.

During active route guidance, the route can be modified according to incoming traffic messages.

Three options are available for **Take account of traffic**:

If you want the system to automatically modify the route according to new traffic messages, select **Automatic**.

If you want to be consulted when a route is modified, select **Manual**.

If you do not want routes to be modified, select **None**.

### Starting, cancelling, resuming route guidance

To start route guidance, enter or select a destination address. Depending on the situation, route

guidance may start automatically, or you may have to follow some instructions on the screen.

To cancel route guidance, select **MENU** in the navigation main menu and then select **STOP NAVIGATION**.

To resume a cancelled route guidance, select **MENU** in the navigation main menu and then select **RESUME GUIDANCE**.

### Turn list

The next turning manoeuvre is displayed on the left side of the screen.

To display a list of all upcoming turns on the active route, select **MENU** in the navigation main menu, select **Route / Waypoints** and then select the **Route** tab.

ROUTE AND WAYPOINTS				
⊕ Add waypoint	60 m	Alexanderstraße	↗	↑
🗺 Overview	400 m	B1/B5 Alexanderstraße	↗	↑
🏁 Finish	8 km	Wexstraße, Tegel	↗	↑
	8 km	A100, Magdeburg	↘	↓
	9 km	A100	↑	↓

Waypoints                      Route

To display a turning manoeuvre on the map, touch the turn arrow icon next to the desired list entry. The map jumps to the respective location on the map.



To display the previous or next turning manoeuvre on the map, touch **<** or **>**.

To avoid the route section currently displayed on the map, touch **⊕**.

If desired, further route sections may be selected to be avoided.

Confirm your selection(s).

## Speech recognition

### Embedded speech recognition

The embedded speech recognition of the Infotainment system enables you to operate various functions of the Infotainment system via voice input. It recognises commands and numeric sequences independently of the relevant speaker. The commands and numeric sequences can be spoken without a voice pause between the individual words.

In the event of incorrect operation or commands, the speech recognition gives visual and / or acoustic feedback and requests you to re-enter the desired command. Apart



from this, the speech recognition acknowledges important commands and will enquire if necessary.

In general, there are different ways to speak commands for performing the desired actions.

#### Notice

To ensure that conversations inside the vehicle do not lead to unintentional triggering of the system functions, the speech recognition does not start until it has been activated.

#### Important information

##### Language support

- Not all languages available for the display of the Infotainment system are also available for the speech recognition.
- If the display language currently selected is not supported by the speech recognition, speech recognition is not available.

In such a case, you need to select another language for the display if you want to control the Infotainment system via voice

input. To change the display language ↷ 96.

#### Address input of destinations in foreign countries

In case you want to enter the address of a destination located in a foreign country via voice input, you need to change the language of the Info Display to the language of the foreign country.

E.g., if the display is currently set to English and you want to enter the name of a city located in France, you need to change the display language to French.

For changing the display language, see "Language" in chapter "System settings" ↷ 96.

#### Input order for destination addresses

The order in which the parts of an address need to be entered using the speech recognition system is dependent on the country where the destination is located.


If the speech recognition system rejects your address entry, repeat the command with a different order of the address parts.

#### Activating speech recognition

##### Notice

Speech recognition is not available during an active phone call.

#### Activation via the button on the steering wheel



Press  on the steering wheel.

The audio system mutes, a voice output message prompts you to say a command, and help menus with the most important commands currently available are shown on the display.


The speech recognition is ready for voice input, after a beep has been given.

You can now say a voice command to initiate a system function (e.g. playing a preset radio station).

#### Adjusting the volume of voice prompts

Press volume button on the steering wheel upwards (increase volume)  or downwards (decrease volume) .


### Interrupting a voice prompt

As an experienced user, you can interrupt a voice prompt by briefly pressing  on the steering wheel.

Alternatively you can say "Set dialogue mode as expert".

A beep is heard immediately, and a command can be stated without having to wait.

### Cancelling a dialogue sequence


To cancel a dialogue sequence and to deactivate the speech recognition, press  on the steering wheel.

If you do not say any command for a certain period of time, or if you say commands that are not recognised by the system, a dialogue sequence is automatically cancelled.

### Operation via speech commands

Follow the instructions given by voice output and shown on the display.

For best results:

- Listen for the voice prompt and wait for the beep before saying a command or replying.
- Read the example commands on the display.
- The voice prompt can be interrupted by pressing  again.
- Wait for the beep and then speak the command naturally, not too fast, not too slow.


Usually commands can be spoken in a single command.

### Voice pass-thru application




The voice pass-thru application of the Infotainment system allows access to the speech recognition commands on your smartphone.

Voice pass-through is available via the phone projection applications Apple CarPlay and Android Auto.


### Activating speech recognition

Press and hold  on the steering wheel until a speech recognition session is started.

### Adjusting the volume of voice prompts

Turn  on the control panel or press volume button on the steering wheel upwards (increase volume)  or downwards (decrease volume) .

### Deactivating speech recognition

Press  on the steering wheel. The speech recognition session is ended.

## Phone

The phone function provides you with the possibility of having mobile phone conversations via a vehicle microphone and the vehicle loudspeakers as well as operating the most important mobile phone functions via the Infotainment system in the vehicle. To be able to use the phone function, the mobile phone must be connected to the Infotainment system via Bluetooth.

Not all phone functions are supported by every mobile phone. The usable phone functions depend on the relevant mobile phone and network provider. You can find further information on this in the operating

instructions for your mobile phone, or you can enquire about them with your network provider.

### Important information for operation and traffic safety

#### Warning

Mobile phones have effects on your environment. For this reason safety regulations and directions have been prepared. You should be familiar with the related directions before you use the telephone function.

#### Warning

Use of the hands-free facility while driving can be dangerous because your concentration is reduced when telephoning. Park your vehicle before you use the hands-free facility. Follow the stipulations of the country in which you find yourself at present.

Do not forget to follow the special regulations that apply in specific areas and always switch off the mobile phone if the use of mobile phones is prohibited, if interference is caused by the mobile phone or if dangerous situations can occur.

### Pairing a device

During the pairing process, PIN code exchange between the Bluetooth device and the Infotainment system and connection of the Bluetooth devices to the Infotainment system are carried out.

### Important information

- Two paired Bluetooth devices can be connected to the Infotainment system at the same time. One device in hands-free mode, the other in audio streaming mode, see description on Bluetooth profile settings below.

However, two devices cannot be used in hands-free mode at the same time.

- Pairing only needs to be carried out once, unless the device is deleted from the list of paired devices. If the device has been connected previously, the Infotainment system establishes the connection automatically.
- Bluetooth operation considerably drains the device's battery. Therefore, connect the device to the USB port for charging.


### Pairing a new device

1. Activate the Bluetooth function of the Bluetooth device. For further information, see the operating instructions for the Bluetooth device.

2. If another Bluetooth device is already connected:

Press , select **OPTIONS**, select **Bluetooth connection** and then touch  **Search**.

If no Bluetooth device is currently connected:

Press  and then touch **Bluetooth search**.

A search for all Bluetooth devices in the near environment is performed.

3. Select the Bluetooth device you wish to pair from the displayed list.
4. Confirm the pairing procedure:
  - If SSP (secure simple pairing) is supported:  
Confirm the messages on the Infotainment system and the Bluetooth device.
  - If SSP (secure simple pairing) is not supported:  
On the Infotainment system: a message is displayed asking you to enter a PIN code on your Bluetooth device.  
On the Bluetooth device: enter the PIN code and confirm your input.
5. Activate the functions you want the paired smartphone to perform and confirm your settings. You can change these Bluetooth profile settings at any time, see below.

The Infotainment system and the device are paired.

6. The phone book is downloaded automatically to the Infotainment system. Depending on the phone, the Infotainment system must be allowed access to the phone book. If required, confirm the messages displayed on the Bluetooth device.


If this function is not supported by the Bluetooth device, a corresponding message is displayed.

### Operations on paired devices

Press , select **OPTIONS** and then select **Bluetooth connection**.


A list of all paired devices is displayed.

### Changing the Bluetooth profile settings

Touch  next to the desired paired device.


Activate or deactivate the profile settings as desired and confirm your settings.

### Connecting a paired device

Devices which are paired but not connected are identified by .



Select the desired device to connect it.


### Disconnecting a device

The currently connected device is identified by .


Select the device to disconnect it.

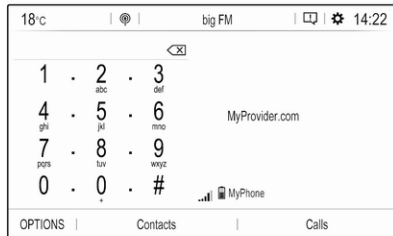
### Deleting a paired device

Touch  in the upper right corner of the screen to display  icons next to each paired device.

Touch  next to the Bluetooth device you want to delete and confirm the displayed message.

### Phone main menu

Press  to display the phone main menu.



Many functions of the mobile phone can now be controlled via the phone main menu (and associated submenus), and via the phone-specific controls on the steering wheel.

## Initiating a phone call

### Entering a phone number

Enter a phone number using the keypad in the phone main menu.



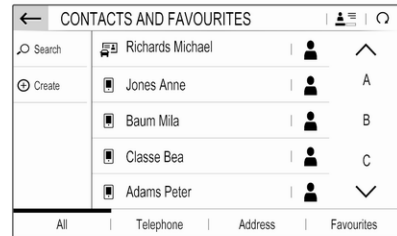
As soon as figures are entered, matching entries from the contacts list are displayed in alphabetical order.

Touch the desired list entry to initiate a phone call.


### Using the contacts list



The contacts list contains all phone book entries from the connected Bluetooth device and all contacts from the navigation system.

Select **Contacts** and then select the desired list type.




### Searching for a contact

The contacts are ordered by the first name or surname. To change the order, touch .

To scroll through the list, use the scroll bar,  or .

To search for a contact via keyboard, touch **Search**.

### Modifying or deleting a contact

Select  next to the contact and then select the desired option.

If you want to add a photo to the contact:

Connect a USB device with the desired photo stored on it to the USB port ↗ 112, touch the photo frame and then select the desired photo.

Confirm your selection to download the selected photo to the system.

### Using the call history

All incoming, outgoing, or missed calls are registered.

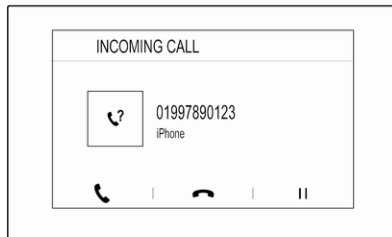
Select **Calls** and then select the desired list.

Select the desired list entry to initiate a call.

### Incoming phone call



If an audio mode, e.g. the radio or USB mode, is active at the moment a call comes in, the audio source is muted and stays muted until the call ends.

A message with the caller's phone number or name is displayed.

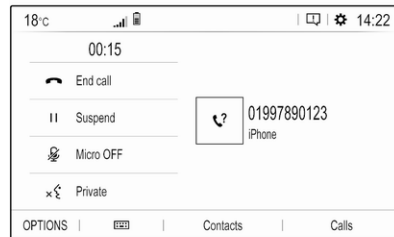


To answer the call, touch .



To reject the call, touch .

To put the call on hold, touch . To resume to the call, touch .

During the ongoing call, the following menu is displayed.



To mute the microphone of the Infotainment system, touch **Micro OFF**.

To continue conversation via the mobile phone (private mode), touch  **Private**. To reactivate the conversation via the Infotainment system, touch  **Private**.

### Notice

If you leave the vehicle and lock it while you are still in a private mode phone conversation, the Infotainment system may remain switched on until you leave the Bluetooth reception area of the Infotainment system.

## Put incoming calls always on hold

For safety reasons the phone function can put all incoming calls on hold by default.

To activate this function, select **OPTIONS**, select **Security** and then select **Put incoming calls on hold**.

## Quick messages

Different quick messages can be sent to contacts via the Infotainment system.

Select **OPTIONS** and then **Quick messages** to display a list of quick messages sorted by different categories.

To send a quick message, select the respective message and choose the contact.

## Multimedia

### Introduction

### Important information on operation and traffic safety

#### Warning

The Infotainment system must be used so that the vehicle can be driven safely at all times. If in doubt, stop the vehicle and operate the Infotainment system while the vehicle is stationary.

### Radio reception

Radio reception may be disrupted by static, noise, distortion or loss of reception due to:

- changes in distance from the transmitter
- multipath reception due to reflection
- shadowing

### Theft-deterrent feature

The Infotainment system is equipped with an electronic security system for the purpose of theft deterrence.



The Infotainment system therefore functions only in this vehicle and is worthless to a thief.



## Multimedia


### Control panel



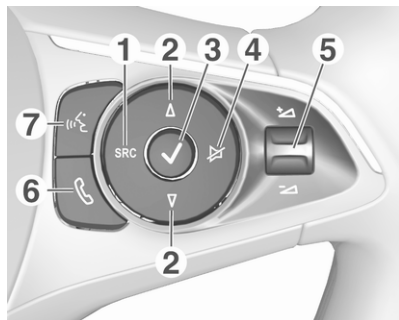


- 1 Info Display / touchscreen
- 2 Home menu
  - Screen buttons for access to:
  - Audio:** audio functions
  - Gallery:** picture and movie functions
  - Phone:** mobile phone functions
  - Projection:** phone projection
  - Settings:** system settings
- 3 Time, date and temperature indicators
- 4 
  - Short press: open phone menu ..... 153
  - or open phone projection function (if activated) ..... 147
  - Long press: activate speech recognition ..... 152
- 5 
  - Short press: skip to next station when radio active .... 143

- or skip to next track when external devices active ..... 147
- Long press: seek up when radio active ..... 143
- or fast forward when external devices active ..... 147
- 6 
  - Short press: switch on Infotainment system if turned off or mute system if turned on
  - Long press: switch off Infotainment system
  - Turn: adjust volume
- 7 
  - Short press: skip to previous station when radio active ..... 143
  - or skip to previous track when external devices active ..... 147

- Long press: seek down when radio active ..... 143
- or fast rewind when external devices active ..... 147
- 8 
  - Short press: display the home screen
  - Long press: open phone projection function (if activated) ..... 147

Steering wheel controls



- 1 **SRC** (Source)  
Select audio source
- 2 **Δ / ▽**  
Select next / previous preset radio station when radio active ..... 143

or select next / previous track / picture when external devices active ..... 147

or select next / previous entry in call / contacts list when phone function active and call / contact list open ..... 153

- 3 **✓**  
Short press: display the home screen  
Long press: if Apple CarPlay™ or Android™ Auto activated, show the respective menu ..... 147
- 4 **🔇**  
Activate / deactivate mute function
- 5 **+ / -**  
Turn upwards / downwards: increase / decrease volume
- 6 **☎**  
Take phone call ..... 153

or open call / contacts list ... 153  
or switch between calls when calls are waiting ..... 153

- 7 **🗨**  
Activate speech recognition 153


## Control elements

The Infotainment system is operated via function buttons, a touchscreen and menus that are shown on the display.

Inputs are made optionally via:


- the control panel on the Infotainment system
- the touchscreen
- the steering wheel controls
- the speech recognition ↗ 153

## Switching the Infotainment system on or off


Short press  to switch the system on. After switching on, the last selected Infotainment source becomes active.

### Notice


Some functions of the Infotainment system are only available if ignition is switched on or engine is running.

Long press  to switch the system off.

## Automatic switch-off

If the Infotainment system has been switched on by pressing  while the ignition is switched off, it will automatically switch off again after 10 minutes.

## Setting the volume


Turn . The current setting is shown on the display.


When the Infotainment system is switched on, the last selected volume is set, provided that it is lower than the maximum start-up volume. For a detailed description.

## Speed compensated volume

When the speed compensated volume is activated, the volume is adapted automatically to make up for the road and wind noise while driving.

## Mute

Press  to mute the Infotainment system.

To cancel the mute function, press  again. The last selected volume is set again.

## Modes of operation

Press  to display the home screen.

## Audio

Select **Audio** to open the main menu of the last selected audio mode.

Select **Source** on the screen to display the interaction selector bar.





To change to another audio mode, touch one of the items in the interaction selector bar.

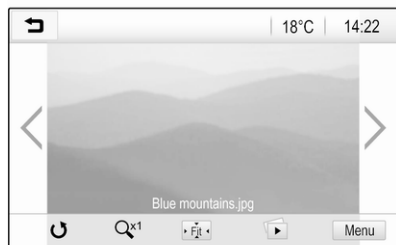
For a detailed description of:

- radio functions ↗ 143
- external devices ↗ 147

## Gallery

Select **Gallery** to open the picture and movie menu for files stored on an external device, e.g. USB device or smartphone.

Select  or  to display the picture or movie menu. Select the desired picture or movie file to show the respective item on the display.



For a detailed description of:

- picture functions ⇨ 147
- movie functions ⇨ 147

## Phone

Before the phone function can be used, a connection has to be established between the Infotainment system and the mobile phone.

For a detailed description of preparing and establishing a Bluetooth connection between the Infotainment system and a mobile phone ⇨ 153.

If the mobile phone is connected, select **Phone** to display the main menu.



For a detailed description of mobile phone operation via the Infotainment system ⇨ 153.

## Projection

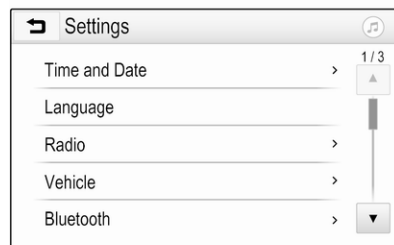
To show specific apps of a smartphone displayed on the Infotainment system, connect the smartphone.

Select **Projection** to start the projection function.

Depending on the smartphone connected, a main menu with different selectable apps is displayed. For a detailed description ⇨ 147.

## Settings

Select **Settings** to open a menu for various system-related settings, e.g. deactivating **Audible Touch Feedback**.

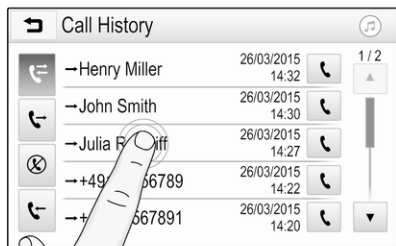


## ↶ screen button

When operating the menus, press ↶ in the respective submenu to return to the next higher menu level.

Press 🏠 to display the home screen.

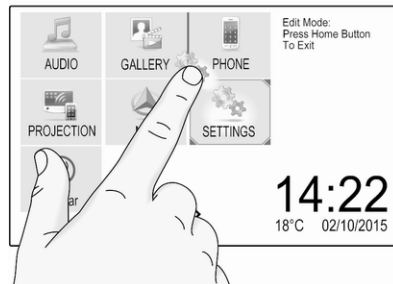
## Selecting or activating a screen button or menu item



Touch a screen button or menu item.

The corresponding system function is activated, a message is shown, or a submenu with further options is displayed.

## Moving items on the home screen



Touch and hold the element until red boxes appear around the icons. Move it to the desired location and release the element.

### Notice

Constant pressure must be applied and the finger must be moved at constant speed.

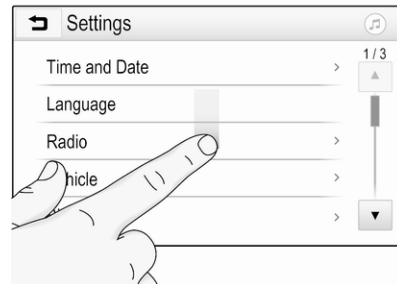
All other items are rearranged.

Press one of the buttons on the control panel to exit edit mode.

### Notice

Edit mode exits automatically after 30 seconds of inactivity.

## Scrolling lists

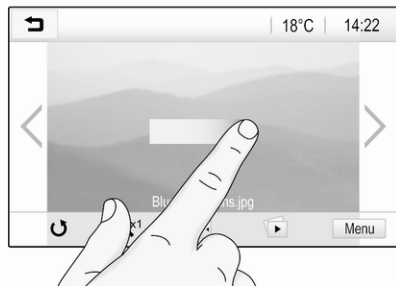


If there are more items available than presentable on the screen, the list must be scrolled.

To scroll through a list, swipe the page or use the arrows.

To return to the top of the list, touch the list title.

## Scrolling pages

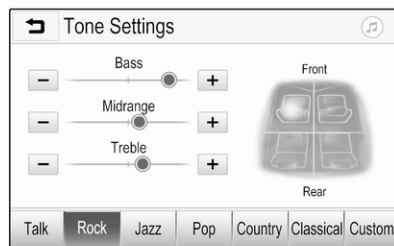


To scroll from one page to another, swipe the page or use the arrows.

## Audio settings

In the tone settings menu, the tone characteristics can be set. The menu may be accessed from each audio main menu.

To open the tone settings menu, select **Menu** in the respective audio main menu. If necessary, scroll through the list of menu items and select **Tone Settings**. The respective menu is displayed.



### Equaliser mode

Use this setting to optimise the tone for the style of music, e.g. **Rock** or **Classical**.

Select the desired sound style in the interaction selector bar at the bottom of the screen. By choosing **Custom**, the following settings can manually be adjusted.

### Bass

Use this setting to enhance or attenuate the deep frequencies of the audio sources.

Touch **+** or **-** to adjust the setting.

### Midrange

Use this setting to enhance or attenuate the midrange frequencies of the audio source.

Touch **+** or **-** to adjust the setting.

### Treble

Use this setting to enhance or attenuate the high frequencies of the audio sources.

Touch **+** or **-** to adjust the setting.

### Setting balance and fader

Use the illustration at the right side of the menu to adjust balance and fader.

To define the point in the passenger compartment where the sound is at its highest level, touch the corresponding point in the illustration. Alternatively, the red marker can be moved to the desired point.

### Notice

The balance and fader settings are valid for all audio sources. They cannot be adjusted individually for each audio source.

## Volume settings

### Adjusting the maximum startup volume

Press  and then select **Settings**.

Select **Radio**, scroll through the list and then select **Max Startup Volume**.

Touch **+** or **-** to adjust the setting.

### Adjusting the speed compensated volume

Press  and then select **Settings**.

Select **Radio**, scroll through the list and then select **Auto Volume**.

To adjust the degree of volume adaptation, select one of the options in the list.

**Off:** no enhancement of volume with increasing vehicle speed.

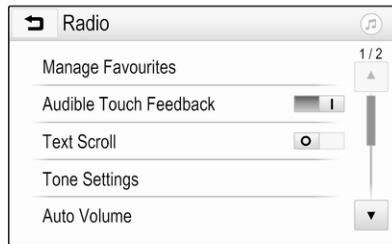
**High:** maximum enhancement of volume with increasing vehicle speed.

### Activating or deactivating the audible touch feedback function

If the audible touch feedback function is activated, each touch of a screen button or menu item is indicated by a beeping sound.

Press  and then select **Settings**.

Select **Radio** and then scroll through the list to **Audible Touch Feedback**.



Touch the screen button next to **Audible Touch Feedback** to activate or deactivate the function.

### Volume of traffic announcements

To adjust the volume of traffic announcements, set the desired volume while a traffic announcement is given out by the system. The respective setting is then stored by the system.

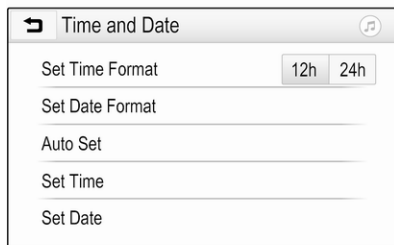
### System settings

The following settings concern the whole system. All other settings are described in the respective chapters of this manual.

### Time and date settings

Press  and then select **Settings**.

Select **Time and Date** to display the respective submenu.



### Set Time Format

To select the desired time format, touch the screen buttons **12 h** or **24 h**.

### Set Date Format

To select the desired date format, select **Set Date Format** and choose between the available options in the submenu.

### Auto Set

To choose whether time and date are to be set automatically or manually, select **Auto Set**.

For time and date to be set automatically, select **On - RDS**.

For time and date to be set manually, select **Off - Manual**. If **Auto Set** is set to **Off - Manual**, the submenu items **Set Time** and **Set Date** become available.

### Set time and date

To adjust the time and date settings, select **Set Time** or **Set Date**.

Touch **+** or **-** to adjust the settings.

### Language settings

Press **⏠** and then select **Settings**.

Select **Language** to display the respective menu.

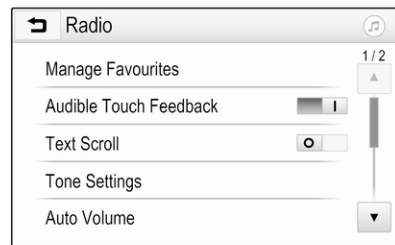
To adjust the language for the menu texts, touch the desired language.

### Text scroll function

If long text is displayed on the screen e.g. song titles or station names, the text may either be scrolled continually or it may be scrolled once and displayed in truncated form.

Press **⏠** and then select **Settings**.

Select **Radio**.



The text will be scrolled continually by activating **Text Scroll**.

### Black display function

The display can be turned off.

Press **⏠** and then select **Settings**.

Scroll through the list and select **Turn Display Off**. The display is turned off. The audio functions remain active.

To turn the display on again, touch the screen or press a button.

### Factory defaults

Press **⏠** and then select **Settings**.

Scroll through the list and select **Return to Factory Settings**.



To restore all vehicle personalisation settings, select **Restore Vehicle Settings**.

To delete the paired Bluetooth devices, the contacts list and the voice mail numbers stored, select **Clear All Private Data**.

To reset tone and volume settings, delete all favourites, and erase the ringtone selection, select **Restore Radio Settings**.

In each case, a warning message is displayed. Select **Continue** to reset the settings.

### System version

Press  and then select **Settings**.

Scroll through the list and select **Software Information**.

If a USB device is connected, the vehicle information can be saved to this USB device.

Select **System Update** and then **Save Vehicle Info to USB**.


For a system update, contact a workshop.

### Vehicle settings

See Vehicle personalisation  83.

## Audio

### Activating the radio

Press  and then select **Audio**. The audio main menu last selected is displayed.

Select **Source** in the radio main menu to open the interaction selector bar.





Select the desired waveband.

The station last played in the selected waveband will be received.



### Searching for stations

#### Automatic station search



Briefly press  or  to play the previous or next station in the station memory.

#### Manual station search


Press and hold  or  on the control panel. Release when the required frequency has almost been reached.

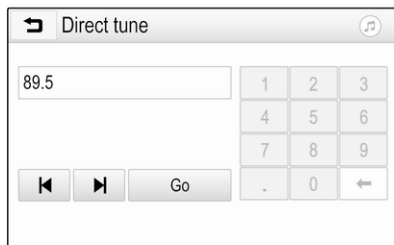
A search is made for the next station that can be received and it is played automatically.




**Notice**

FM waveband: when the RDS function is activated, only RDS stations are searched for, and when the radio traffic service (TP) is activated, only traffic service stations are searched for.

**Station tuning**

Touch  on the screen. The **Direct tune** screen is shown.



Enter the desired frequency. Use  to delete digits entered. If necessary, touch  or  to subsequently adjust the input.

Confirm the input to play the station.


**Station lists**

Select **Menu** in the radio main menu to open the corresponding waveband-specific submenu.

Select **Station List**. All receivable stations of the relevant waveband and in the current reception area are displayed.

Select the desired station.

**Notice**

The currently received radio station is indicated by the  symbol next to the station name.

**Category lists**

Numerous radio stations broadcast a PTY code, which specifies the type of programme transmitted (e.g. news). Some stations also change the PTY code depending on the content which is currently transmitted.

The Infotainment system stores these stations, sorted by programme type in the corresponding category list.

**Notice**

The **Categories** list item is not available for the AM waveband.


To search for a programme type determined by the stations, select **Categories**.

A list of programme types currently available is displayed.

Select the desired programme type. A list of stations of the selected programme type is displayed.

Select the desired station.

**Notice**

The currently received radio station is indicated by the  symbol next to the station name.

**Update station lists**

If the stations stored in the waveband-specific station list can no longer be received, the station lists must be updated.

**Notice**

The FM station list is updated automatically.

Select **Menu** in the radio main menu and then select **Update Station List**.

**Notice**

If a waveband-specific station list is updated, the corresponding category list is also updated.

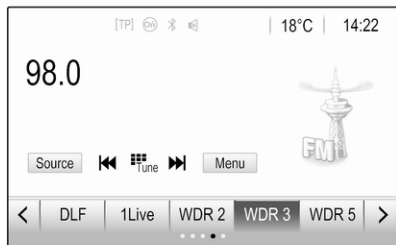
A station search is started and a corresponding message is displayed. Once the search is finished, the respective station list is displayed.

#### Notice

The currently received radio station is indicated by the ► symbol next to the station name.

### Storing favourite stations

Stations of all wavebands can be stored manually in the favourite lists.



Five favourite lists with five favourites each are available.

#### Notice

The currently received station is highlighted.

#### Storing the currently active station

If required, touch < or > to scroll to the desired favourite list.


To store the currently active radio station as a favourite, touch and hold the desired favourite button for a few seconds. The favourite button will be titled as the corresponding frequency or station name.

#### Retrieving a station

If required, touch < or > to scroll to the desired favourite list.

Select the desired favourite.

#### Defining the number of available favourite lists

To define the number of favourite lists displayed for selection, press  and then select **Settings** on the screen.

Select **Radio** and then **Manage Favourites** to display the respective submenu.

Activate or deactivate the favourite lists to be displayed.

### RDS configuration

Touch **Menu** in the FM radio main menu to open the corresponding waveband-specific submenu.

#### Activating RDS

Scroll to **RDS**.

Activate or deactivate **RDS**.

#### Traffic announcements

Radio traffic service stations are RDS stations that broadcast traffic news. If the traffic service is switched on, the currently playing audio source is interrupted for the duration of the traffic announcement.

#### Activating the traffic programme function

Select **Menu** in the FM radio main menu to open the corresponding waveband-specific submenu.


Touch the screen button next to **Traffic Programme** to activate or deactivate the function.

#### Notice

In the station list, TP is displayed next to the stations providing a traffic programme.

If the radio traffic service is activated, **[TP]** is shown in the top line of all main menus. If the current station is not a radio traffic service station, TP is greyed-out and a search is started automatically for the next radio traffic service station. As soon as a radio traffic service station is found, TP is highlighted. If no radio traffic service station is found, TP remains greyed-out.

If a traffic announcement is broadcast on the respective station, a message is displayed.

To interrupt the announcement and return to the function previously activated, touch the screen or press .

## Regionalisation

Sometimes RDS stations broadcast regionally different programmes on different frequencies.

Select **Menu** in the FM radio main menu to open the corresponding waveband-specific submenu and scroll to **Region**.

Activate or deactivate **Region**.

If regionalisation is activated, alternative frequencies with the same regional programmes are selected where necessary. If regionalisation is switched off, alternative frequencies of the stations are selected without regard to regional programmes.

## Digital audio broadcasting

Digital audio broadcasting (DAB) broadcasts radio stations digitally.

DAB stations are indicated by the programme name instead of the broadcasting frequency.

## DAB Announcements

Besides their music programmes, a lot of DAB stations also broadcast announcements of various categories. If some or all categories are activated, the currently received DAB service is interrupted when an announcement of these categories is made.

Select **Menu** in the DAB radio main menu to open the corresponding waveband-specific submenu.

Scroll through the list and select **DAB Announcements** to display a list of the categories available.

Activate all or just the desired announcement categories. Different announcement categories can be selected at the same time.

## DAB-DAB Linking

If this function is activated, the device switches over to the same service (programme) on another DAB ensemble (if available) when the DAB signal is too weak to be picked up by the receiver.

Select **Menu** in the DAB radio main menu to open the corresponding waveband-specific submenu.

Scroll through the list and activate or deactivate **DAB-DAB Linking**.

## DAB-FM Linking

This function enables switching from a DAB station to a corresponding FM station and vice versa.

If this function is activated, the device switches over to a corresponding FM station of the active DAB service (if available) when the DAB signal is too weak to be picked up by the receiver.

Scroll through the list and activate or deactivate **DAB-FM Linking**.

### L Band

This function defines which DAB wavebands are to be received by the Infotainment system.

L Band (earth and satellite radio) is another radio band that can be received additionally.

Select **Menu** in the DAB radio main menu to open the corresponding waveband-specific submenu.

Scroll through the list and activate or deactivate **L Band**.

### Intellitext

The **Intellitext** function allows the reception of additional information such as financial information, sports, news etc.

#### Notice

The content available depends on the station and region.

Select **Menu** in the DAB radio main menu to open the corresponding waveband-specific submenu.

Scroll through the list and select **Intellitext**.

Select one of the categories and choose a specific item to display detailed information.

### EPG

The Electronic Programme Guide provides information on the current and upcoming programme of the respective DAB station.

Select **Menu** in the DAB radio main menu and then select **Station List**.

To display the programme of the desired station, touch the icon next to the station.

### External devices

A USB port for the connection of external devices is located in the centre console.

#### Notice

The USB port must always be kept clean and dry.

### USB port

An MP3 player, USB device, SD card (via USB connector / adapter) or smartphone can be connected to the USB port.

Up to two USB devices can be connected to the Infotainment system at a time.

#### Notice

For the connection of two USB devices, an external USB hub is required.

The Infotainment system can play audio files, show picture files or play movie files contained in USB devices.

When connected to the USB port, various functions of the devices mentioned above can be operated via the controls and menus of the Infotainment system.

#### Notice

Not all auxiliary devices are supported by the Infotainment system. Check the compatibility list on our website.

### Connecting / disconnecting a device

Connect one of the devices mentioned above to the USB port. If required, use the appropriate connection cable. The music function starts automatically.

#### Notice

If a non-readable USB device is connected, a corresponding error message appears and the Infotainment system automatically switches to the previous function.

To disconnect the USB device, select another function and then remove the USB device.


#### Caution

Avoid disconnecting the device during playback. This may damage the device or the Infotainment system.

### USB Auto Launch

By default, the USB audio menu is displayed automatically as soon as a USB device is connected.

If desired, this function can be deactivated.

Press  and then select **Settings** to open the settings menu.


Select **Radio**, scroll to **USB Auto Launch** and touch the screen button next to the function.

To reactivate the function, touch the screen button again.

### Bluetooth

Devices which support the Bluetooth music profiles A2DP and AVRCP can be connected wirelessly to the Infotainment system. The Infotainment system can play music files contained in these devices.

### Connecting a device

For a detailed description on how to establish a Bluetooth connection  153.

### File formats and folders

The maximum capacity of a device supported by the Infotainment system amounts to 5000 music files, 5000 picture files, 500 movie files, 5000 folders and 15 stages of folder

structure. Only devices formatted in the FAT16 / FAT32 file system are supported.

If there are images included in the audio metadata, these images are displayed on the screen.

#### Notice

Some files may not be played properly. This may be due to a different recording format or the condition of the file.

Files from online shops to which Digital Rights Management (DRM) has been applied cannot be played.

The Infotainment system can play the following audio, picture and movie files stored on external devices.

### Audio files

The playable audio file formats are MP3 (MPEG-1 Layer 3, MPEG-2 Layer 3), WMA, AAC, AAC+, ALAC OGG WAF (PCM), AIFF, 3GPP (audio only), Audio Books and LPCM. iPod® and iPhone® devices play ALAC, AIFF, Audio Books and LPCM.

When playing a file with ID3 tag information, the Infotainment system can display information, e.g. on the track title and artist.

### Picture files

The displayable picture file formats are JPG, JPEG, BMP, PNG and GIF. JPG files must be 64 to 5000 pixels in width and 64 to 5000 pixels in height. BMP, PNG and GIF files must be 64 to 1024 pixels in width and 64 to 1024 pixels in height.

The pictures should not exceed a file size of 1MB.

### Movie files

The playable movie file formats are AVI and MP4.

The maximum resolution is 1280 x 720 pixels. The frame rate must be less than 30 fps.

The usable codec is H.264/MPEG-4 AVC.

The playable audio formats are MP3, AC3, AAC and WMA.


The displayable subtitle format is SMI.

### Activating the music function

If the device is not yet connected to the Infotainment system, connect the device.

Usually, the respective audio main menu is displayed automatically.

If playback is not started automatically, e.g. if **USB Auto Launch** is deactivated, take the following steps:

Press  and then select **Audio** to open the audio main menu last selected.



Select **Source** in the interaction selector bar and then select the desired audio source to open the respective audio main menu.

Playback of the audio tracks starts automatically.



### Playback functions


#### Interrupting and resuming playback

Touch  to interrupt playback. The screen button changes to .


Touch  to resume playback.

#### Playing the next or previous track

Touch  to play the next track.

Touch  within the first 2 seconds of the track playing to return to the previous track.

#### Returning to the beginning of the current track

Touch  after 2 seconds of the track playing.

**Fast forwarding and rewinding**

Touch and hold ◀◀ or ▶▶. Release to return to normal playback mode.

Alternatively, the slider showing the current track position can be moved to the left or right.

**Playing tracks randomly**

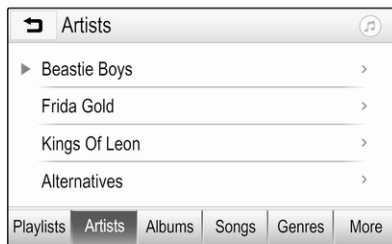
Touch 🎲 to play the tracks in random order. The screen button changes to 🎲.

Touch 🎲 again to deactivate the shuffle function and go back to the normal playback mode.

**Browse Music function**

To display the browse screen, touch the screen. Alternatively, select **Menu** in the audio main screen to display the respective audio menu and then select **Browse Music**.

Different categories, in which the tracks are sorted, are displayed, e.g. **Playlists**, **Artists**, or **Albums**.



Select the desired category, subcategory (if available) and then choose a track.

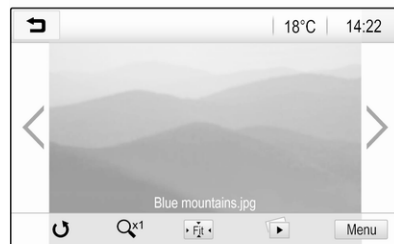
Select the track to start playback.

**Activating the picture viewer**

If the device is not yet connected to the Infotainment system, connect the device.

Press 🏠 and then select **Gallery** to open the media main menu.

Touch 🖼️ to open the picture main menu to display a list of items stored on the USB device. Select the desired picture. If this is stored within a folder, select the respective folder first.



Touch the screen to hide the menu bar. Touch the screen again to redisplay the menu bar.

**Full screen mode**

Select 🖼️ to display the picture in full screen mode. Touch the screen to exit full screen mode.

**Viewing the next or previous picture**

Touch > or swipe to the left to view the next picture.

Touch < or swipe to the right to view the previous picture.

**Rotating a picture**


Select 🔄 to rotate the picture.



### Zoom in on a picture

Touch **Q**<sup>1</sup> once or several times to zoom in on a picture or to return to its original size.

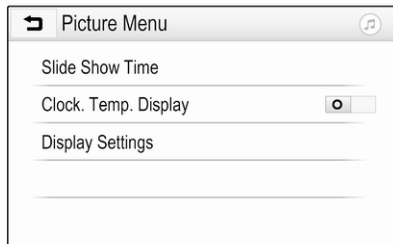
### Viewing a slide show

Select  to view the pictures stored on the USB device in a slide show.

Touch the screen to end the slide show.

### Picture menu

Select **Menu** in the bottom line of the screen to display the **Picture Menu**.



### Slide show time

Select **Slide Show Time** to display a list of possible time sequences and select the desired time sequence.

### Clock and temperature display

To display time and temperature in full screen mode, activate **Clock. Temp. Display**.


### Display settings


Select **Display Settings** to open a submenu for the adjustment of brightness and contrast.

Touch **+** or **-** to adjust the settings.

### Activating the movie function

If the device is not yet connected to the Infotainment system, connect the device.

Press  and then select **Gallery** to open the media main menu.


Touch  to open the movie main menu to display a list of items stored on the USB device. Select the desired movie. If this is stored within a folder, select the respective folder first.

The movie is shown.





### Function buttons

#### Full screen

Select  to display the movie in full screen mode. Touch the screen to exit full screen mode.

#### Interrupting and resuming playback

Touch  to interrupt playback. The screen button changes to .

Touch  to resume playback.

#### Playing the next or previous track

Touch  to play the next movie file.

Touch **⏮** within the first 5 seconds of the movie playing to return to the previous movie file.

### Returning to the beginning of the current movie

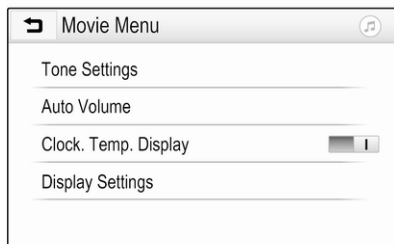
Touch **⏮** after 5 seconds of the movie playing.

### Fast forwarding and rewinding

Touch and hold **⏮** or **⏭**. Release to return to normal playback mode.

### Movie menu

Select **Menu** in the bottom line of the screen to display the **Movie Menu**.



### Clock and temperature display

To display time and temperature in full screen mode, activate **Clock. Temp. Display**.

### Display settings

Select **Display Settings** to open a submenu for adjustment of brightness and contrast.

Touch **+** or **-** to adjust the settings.

### Preparing the smartphone

Android phone: Download the Android Auto app to the smartphone from the Google Play™ Store.

iPhone: Make sure Siri® is activated on the smartphone.

### Activating phone projection in the settings menu

Press **⏠** to display the home screen and then select **Settings**.

Scroll through the list to **Apple CarPlay** or **Android Auto**.

Make sure the respective application is activated.

### Connecting the mobile phone

Connect the smartphone to the USB port.

### Starting phone projection

To start the phone projection function, press **⏠** and then select **Projection**.

#### Notice

If the application is recognised by the Infotainment system, the application icon may change to **Apple CarPlay** or **Android Auto**.

Alternatively, the function can be started by pressing **⏠** for a few seconds.

The phone projection screen displayed depends on the smartphone and software version.

### Returning to the home screen

Press **⏠**.



### Speech recognition

The voice pass-thru application of the Infotainment system allows access to the speech recognition commands on

a smartphone. See the smartphone manufacturer's operating instructions to find out whether the smartphone supports this feature.




In order to use the voice pass-thru application, the smartphone must be connected to the Infotainment system via USB cable ⇨ 147 or via Bluetooth ⇨ 153.

### Activating speech recognition


Press and hold  on the control panel or  on the steering wheel to start a speech recognition session. A voice command message is displayed on the screen.

As soon as a beep is heard, a command can be said. For information on the commands supported, see the operating instructions of the smartphone.

### Adjusting the volume of voice prompts

Turn  on the control panel or press  /  on the right side of the steering wheel to increase or decrease the volume of voice prompts.

### Deactivating speech recognition

Press  on the steering wheel. The voice command message disappears and the speech recognition session is ended.

### Phone

The phone function provides the possibility of having mobile phone conversations via a vehicle microphone and the vehicle loudspeakers as well as operating the most important mobile phone functions via the Infotainment system in the vehicle. To be able to use the phone function, the mobile phone must be connected to the Infotainment system via Bluetooth.

Not all phone functions are supported by every mobile phone. The usable phone functions depend on the relevant mobile phone and network provider. Further information on this can be found in the operating instructions of the mobile phone or by the network provider.

### Important information for operation and traffic safety

#### Warning

Mobile phones have effects on the environment. For this reason, safety regulations and directions have been prepared. Be familiar with the related directions before using the telephone function.

#### Warning

Use of the hands-free facility while driving can be dangerous because the concentration is reduced when telephoning. Park the vehicle before using the hands-free facility. Follow the stipulations of the country you are in.

Do not forget to follow the special regulations that apply in specific areas and always switch off the mobile phone if the use of mobile phones is prohibited, if


interference is caused by the mobile phone or if dangerous situations can occur.

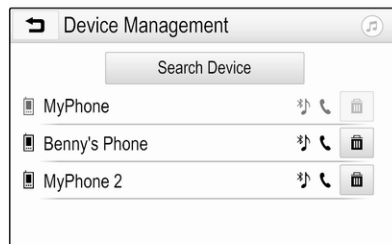
## Pairing a device

### Important information


- Up to ten devices can be paired to the system.
- Only one paired device can be connected to the Infotainment system at a time.
- Pairing only needs to be carried out once, unless the device is deleted from the list of paired devices. If the device has been connected previously, the Infotainment system establishes the connection automatically.
- Bluetooth operation considerably drains the device's battery. Therefore, connect the device to the USB port for charging.

### Pairing a new device

1. Activate the Bluetooth function of the Bluetooth device. For further information, see the operating instructions of the Bluetooth device.
2. Press  and then select **Settings** on the display. Select **Bluetooth** and then **Device Management** to display the respective menu.





### Notice

If no phone is connected, the **Device Management** menu can also be accessed via the phone menu: Press  and then select **Phone**.

3. Touch **Search Device**. All discoverable Bluetooth devices in the environment are displayed in a new search list.
4. Touch the respective Bluetooth device.
5. Confirm the pairing procedure:
  - If SSP (secure simple pairing) is supported: Confirm the messages on the Infotainment system and the Bluetooth device.
  - If SSP (secure simple pairing) is not supported: On the Infotainment system: an **Info** message is displayed asking to enter a PIN code on the Bluetooth device. On the Bluetooth device: enter the PIN code and confirm the input.
6. The Infotainment system and the device are paired.

**Notice**

If the Bluetooth device is successfully paired,  next to the Bluetooth device indicates that the phone function is enabled and  indicates that the Bluetooth music function is enabled.

- The phone book is downloaded automatically to the Infotainment system. Depending on the phone, the Infotainment system must be allowed access to the phone book. If required, confirm the messages displayed on the Bluetooth device.

If this function is not supported by the Bluetooth device, a corresponding message is displayed.

**Changing the Bluetooth PIN code**

Press  and then select **Settings**.

Select **Bluetooth** and then **Change Pairing PIN** to display the respective submenu. A keypad is displayed.

Enter the desired four-digit PIN code.

To delete an entered number, select



Confirm the input by selecting **Enter**.

**Connecting a paired device**

Press  and then select **Settings**.

Select **Bluetooth** and then **Device Management** to display the respective menu.

Select the respective Bluetooth device. The device is connected.

**Notice**

The connected device and the available options are highlighted.

**Disconnecting a device**

Press  and then select **Settings**.

Select **Bluetooth** and then **Device Management** to display the respective menu.


Select the Bluetooth device currently connected. A message will be displayed.

Select **Yes** to disconnect the device.

**Deleting a device**

Press  and then select **Settings**.

Select **Bluetooth** and then **Device Management** to display the respective menu.

Select  next to the Bluetooth device. A message will be displayed.

Select **Yes** to delete the device.


**Device info**

Press  and then select **Settings**.

Select **Bluetooth** and then **Device Information** to display the respective menu.

The information displayed includes **Device Name**, **Address**, and **PIN Code**.

**Phone main menu**

Press  and then select **Phone** to display the respective menu.




Many functions of the mobile phone can now be controlled via the phone main menu (and associated submenus), and via the phone-specific controls on the steering wheel.

## Initiating a phone call

### Entering a phone number

Press  and then select **Phone**.

Enter a telephone number using the keypad in the phone main menu.

To delete one or more entered characters, touch or touch and hold .

Touch  to start dialling.

## Using the phone book

### Notice


When pairing a mobile phone with the Infotainment system via Bluetooth, the phone book of the mobile phone is downloaded automatically.

Press  and then select **Phone**.


Select **Contacts** in the phone main menu.



### Notice


The  symbol next to a phone number indicates that the contact is stored on the SIM card.

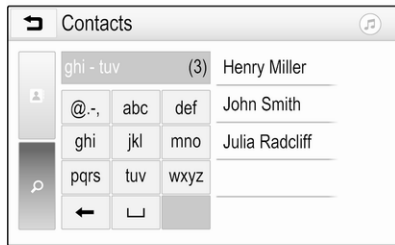
## Quick search

1. Select  to display a list of all contacts.
2. Scroll through the list of contacts entries.
3. Touch the desired contact. A menu with all phone numbers stored for the selected contact is displayed.
4. Select the desired phone number to initiate the call.

## Search menu

If the phone book contains a large number of entries, the search menu can be used to find the desired contact.

Select  in the **Contacts** menu to display the search tab.



The letters are organised in alphabetical groups on the screen buttons: **abc**, **def**, **ghi**, **jkl**, **mno**, **pqrs**, **tuv**, and **wxyz**.

Use **←** to delete an entered group of letters.

1. Select the button containing the first letter of the desired contact.

E.g.: If the desired contact starts with 'g' select the **ghi** screen button.

All contacts containing one of the letters on this button, in the example 'g', 'h', and 'i', are displayed.

2. Select the button containing the second letter of the desired contact.
3. Continue to enter more letters of the desired contact until the desired contact is displayed
4. Touch the desired contact. A menu with all phone numbers stored for the selected contact is displayed.
5. Select the desired phone number to initiate the call. The following screen is shown.



### Contacts settings

The contacts list can be sorted by last name or first name.

Press **🏠** and then select **Settings** to display the respective menu.

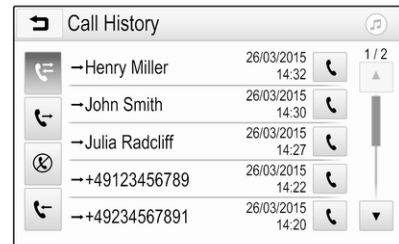
Select **Bluetooth** and then **Sort Order**. Activate the desired option.

### Using the call history

All incoming, outgoing, or missed calls are registered.

Press **🏠** and then select **Phone**.

Select **Call History** in the phone main menu.



Select **📞** for outgoing calls, **⊗** for missed calls, **📞** for incoming calls and **📞** for all calls. The respective call list is displayed.

Select the desired entry to initiate a call.

## Redialling a number

The last dialled phone number can be redialled.

Press , select **Phone** and then select .

## Using speed dial numbers

Speed dial numbers that are stored on the mobile phone can also be dialled using the keypad of the phone main menu.

Press  and then select **Phone**.

Touch and hold the respective digit on the keypad to initiate the call.


## Incoming phone call

### Taking a call


If an audio mode, e.g. the radio or USB mode, is active at the moment a call comes in, the audio source is muted and stays muted until the call ends.

A message with the caller's phone number or name (if available) is displayed.



To answer the call, select .

### Rejecting a call

To reject the call, select .

### Changing the ring tone

Press  and then select **Settings**.

Select **Bluetooth** and then **Ringtones** to display the respective menu. A list of all paired devices is displayed.

Select the desired device. A list of all ringtones available for this device is displayed.


Select one of the ringtones.


## Functions during a call

During an ongoing phone call, the phone main menu is displayed.




### Deactivating the hands-free mode temporarily

To continue the conversation via the mobile phone, activate .

To return to the hands-free mode, deactivate .

### Deactivating the microphone temporarily

To mute the microphone, activate .

To reactivate the microphone, deactivate .



### Ending a phone call

To end the call, select .

### Voice mail box

The voice mail box can be operated via the Infotainment system.

#### Voice mail number

Press  and then select **Settings**.

Select **Bluetooth**. Scroll through the list and select **Voice Mail Numbers**.


A list of all paired devices is displayed.

Select the respective phone. A keypad is displayed.

Enter the voice mail number for the respective phone.

#### Calling the voice mail box

Press  and then select **Phone**.

Select  on the screen. The mail box is called.

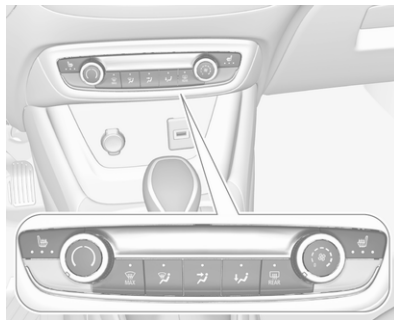
Alternatively, enter the voice mail number via the phone keypad.

## Climate control









<b>Climate control systems</b> .....	160
Heating and ventilation system	160
Air conditioning system .....	161
Electronic climate control system .....	164
Auxiliary heater .....	168
<b>Air vents</b> .....	169
Adjustable air vents .....	169
Fixed air vents .....	169
<b>Maintenance</b> .....	170
Air intake .....	170
Air conditioning regular operation .....	170
Service .....	170

## Climate control systems

### Heating and ventilation system



Controls for:

- temperature / \
- air distribution ,  and 
- fan speed 
- demisting and defrosting 
- heated rear window and heated exterior mirrors 
- heated windscreen 
- heated seats 

### Temperature / \




Adjust the temperature by turning / \ to the desired temperature.

red area : warmer  
blue area : colder

Heating will not be fully effective until the engine has reached normal operating temperature.


### Air distribution , ,

Press:

-  : to windscreen and front door windows
-  : to head area and rear seats via adjustable front air vents
-  : to front and rear foot well and windscreen




Combinations are possible.

### Fan speed

Adjust the air flow by turning  to the desired speed.

## Demisting and defrosting the windows



- Press : the air distribution is directed towards the windscreen.
- Set temperature controller  $\nearrow$   $\searrow$  to warmest level.
- Set fan speed  to highest level.
- Switch on heated rear window .
- Open side air vents as required and direct them towards the door windows.

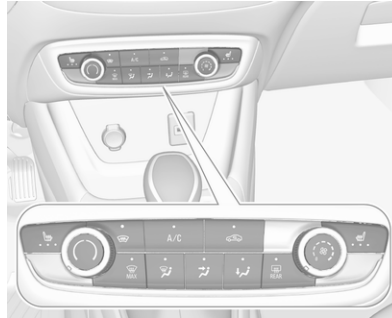
Heated rear window   $\rightarrow$  23.

Heated exterior mirrors   $\rightarrow$  20.








Heated windscreen   $\rightarrow$  24.



Heated seats   $\rightarrow$  30.

## Air conditioning system



Controls for:

- temperature  $\nearrow$   $\searrow$
- air distribution ,  and 
- fan speed 
- demisting and defrosting 
- air conditioning **A/C**
- air recirculation 
- heated rear window and heated exterior mirrors 

- heated windscreen 
- heated seats 



Some changes of settings are indicated briefly in the Info Display. Activated functions are indicated by the LED in the respective button.

### Temperature $\nearrow$ $\searrow$




Adjust the temperature by turning  $\nearrow$   $\searrow$  to the desired temperature.

red area : warmer  
blue area : colder

Heating will not be fully effective until the engine has reached normal operating temperature.


### Air distribution

Press:

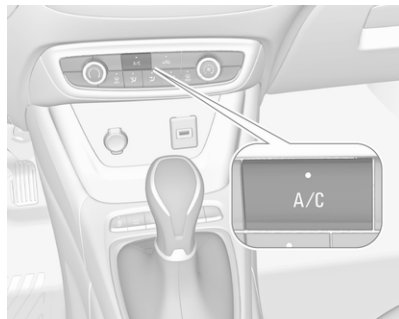
-  : to windscreen and front door windows
-  : to head area and rear seats via adjustable front air vents
-  : to front and rear foot well and windscreen

Combinations are possible.

### Fan speed

Adjust the air flow by turning  to the desired speed.

### Air conditioning A/C



Press **A/C** to switch on cooling. Activation is indicated by the LED in the button. Cooling is only functional when the engine is running and climate control fan is switched on.

Press **A/C** again to switch off cooling.

The air conditioning system cools and dehumidifies (dries) as soon as the outside temperature is slightly above the freezing point. Therefore condensation may form and drip from under the vehicle.







If no cooling or drying is required, switch off the cooling system for fuel saving reasons.

Activated cooling may inhibit Autostops.



Stop-start system  175.


### Demisting and defrosting the windows



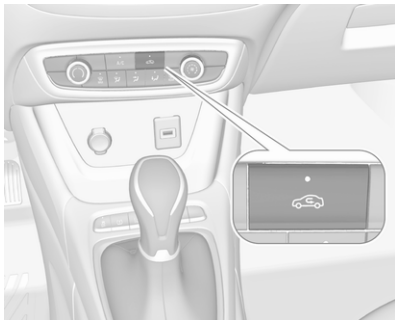
- Press : the air distribution is directed towards the windscreen.
- Set temperature controller   to warmest level.
- Switch on air conditioning **A/C** if required.
- Set fan speed  to highest level.
- Switch on heated rear window .
- Switch on heated windscreen .
- Open side air vents as required and direct them towards the door windows.


**Notice**

If  is pressed while the engine is running, an Autostop will be inhibited until  is pressed again.


If  is pressed while the engine is in an Autostop, the engine will restart automatically.

Stop-start system ⇨ 175.

**Air recirculation system **


Press  to activate air recirculation mode, LED is indicated.

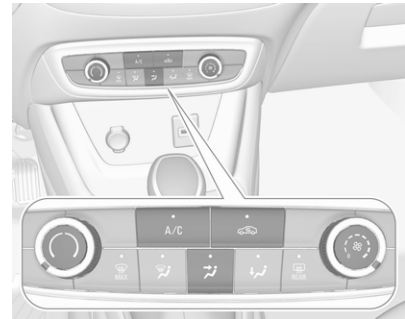
Select air recirculation to assist in cooling the interior or in blocking outside odours or exhaust.

Press  again to deactivate air recirculation mode.





** Warning**

The exchange of fresh air is reduced in air recirculation mode. In operation without cooling, the air humidity increases, so the windows may mist up from inside. The quality of the passenger compartment air deteriorates, which may cause the occupants to feel drowsy.

In warm and very humid ambient air conditions, the windscreen may mist up from outside when cold air is directed towards it. If windscreen mists up from outside, activate windscreen wiper and deactivate .

**Maximum cooling**

Briefly open the windows so that hot air can disperse quickly.

- Switch on air conditioning **A/C**.
- Press  for air recirculation system on.
- Press  for air distribution.
- Set temperature control  to coldest level.
- Set fan speed  to highest level.
- Open all vents.

Heated rear window  ⇨ 23.

Heated exterior mirrors  ⇨ 20.

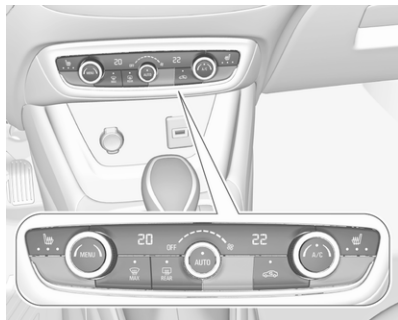
Heated windscreen  ⇨ 24.

Heated seats  ↗ 30.


## Electronic climate control system






The dual zone climate control allows different temperatures for driver side and front passenger side.

In automatic mode, temperature, fan speed and air distribution are regulated automatically.



Controls for:

- temperature on driver side / \
- **MENU** enters the Climate setting menu in the Info Display
- fan speed 

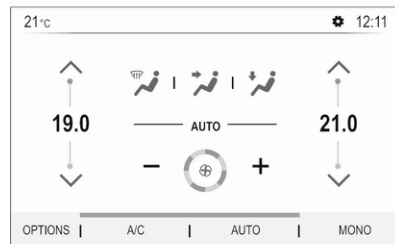
- automatic mode **AUTO**
- temperature on front passenger side / \
- cooling **A/C**
- manual air recirculation 
- demisting and defrosting 
- heated rear window and heated exterior mirrors 
- heated windscreen 
- heated seats 

Activated functions are indicated by the LED in the respective control.

The electronic climate control system is only fully operational when the engine is running.



Make sure the sun sensor used by the electronic climate control system is not covered ↗ 56.

## Climate settings menu





Press **MENU** to enter the climate setting menu.

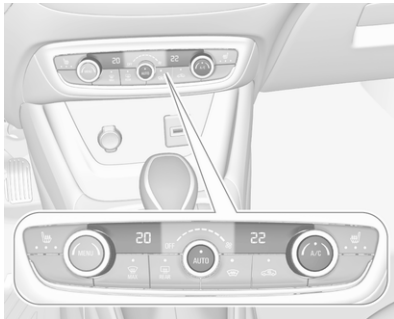
Settings for:

- air distribution 
- fan speed 
- temperature for driver and passenger side
- dual zone temperature synchronisation **MONO**
- cooling **A/C**
- automatic mode **AUTO**


Climate setting menu can also be displayed

- by pressing  and then selecting **Climate** on the 7" Colour Info Display or
- by pressing  and then selecting **Climate** from the menu on the 8" Colour Info Display.

### Automatic mode AUTO



Basic settings for automatic control with maximum comfort:

- Press **AUTO** to start the cooling automatically.
- Open all air vents to allow optimised air distribution in automatic mode.
- Set the preselected temperatures for driver and front passenger using the left and right rotary knob. Recommended temperature is 22 °C. Temperature is indicated in displays beside the controls and in the climate settings menu.
- Air recirculation mode  should be deactivated. When deactivated the LED in the button is not illuminated.

Three different pre-set fan speeds can be selected by repeatedly tapping on **AUTO** either on the climate control panel or on the Info Display (**OPTIONS**).

- **Soft** for a soft and silent air distribution.
- **Normal** for thermal comfort and silent air distribution.
- **Fast** for a dynamic and efficient air distribution.


The selected setting is shown on the Info Display.

### Manual settings

Climate control system settings can be changed by activating the following functions:

#### Fan speed



Adjust the air flow by turning rotary knob  to the desired speed.




To return to automatic mode, press **AUTO**.

### Air distribution



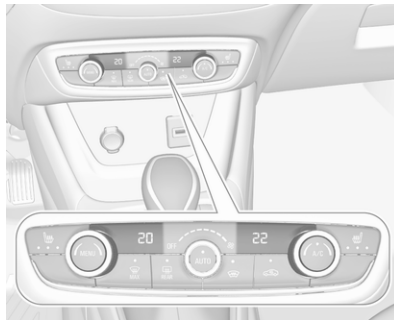
Press **MENU**.

Touch

-  : to windscreen and front door windows
-  : to head area and rear seats via adjustable air vents
-  : to front and rear foot well and windscreen

To return to automatic air distribution, press **AUTO**.

### Temperature preselection / \



Set the preselected temperatures separately for the driver and the front passenger to the desired value using the left and right rotary knob. The rotary knob on the passenger side changes the temperature of the passenger side. The rotary knob on the driver's side changes the temperature of the driver's side or of both sides, depending on activation of synchronisation **MONO** in the climate control settings menu. Press **MENU** to enter the climate control settings menu.

Recommended temperature is 22 °C. Temperature is indicated in displays beside the rotary knob and in the climate settings menu.

If the minimum temperature **Lo** is set, the climate control system runs at maximum cooling, if cooling **A/C** is switched on.

If the maximum temperature **Hi** is set, the climate control system runs at maximum heating.

#### Notice

If **A/C** is switched on, reducing the set cabin temperature can cause the engine to restart from an Autostop or inhibit an Autostop.

Stop-start system  175.

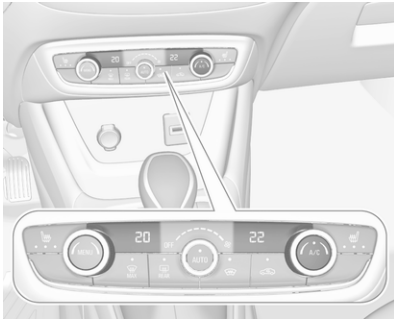
### Dual zone temperature synchronisation **MONO** or **SYNC**

Press **MENU** to enter the menu. Touch **MONO** or **SYNC** to link passenger side temperature setting to the driver side.

When passenger side rotary knob will be adjusted, synchronisation is deactivated.





## Cooling A/C



Press **A/C** to switch on cooling. The LED in the button illuminates to indicate activation. Cooling is only functional when the engine is running and climate control fan is switched on. Press **A/C** again to switch off cooling. The air conditioning system cools and dehumidifies (dries) when outside temperature is above a specific level. Therefore condensation may form and drip from under the vehicle. If no cooling or drying is required, switch off the cooling system for fuel saving reasons.

Manual air recirculation 


Press  to activate the air recirculation mode. The LED in the button illuminates to indicate activation.

Press  again to deactivate recirculation mode.

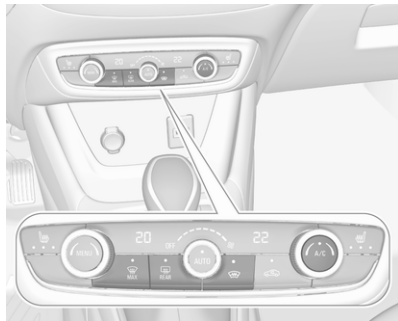
 **Warning**





The exchange of fresh air is reduced in air recirculation mode. In operation without cooling, the air humidity increases, so the windows may mist up from inside. The quality of the passenger

compartment air deteriorates, which may cause the occupants to feel drowsy.



In warm and very humid ambient air conditions, the windscreen may mist up from outside, when cold air is directed towards it. If windscreen mists up from outside, activate windscreen wiper and deactivate .


## Demisting and defrosting the windows



- Press . The LED in the button illuminates to indicate activation.
- Temperature and air distribution are set automatically and the fan runs at high speed.
- Switch on cooling by pressing **A/C**, if required.
- Switch on heated rear window .
- Switch on heated windscreen .
- To return to previous mode press  again, to return to automatic mode press **AUTO**.


## Notice

If  is pressed while the engine is running, an Autostop will be inhibited until  is pressed again.

If  is pressed while the engine is in an Autostop, the engine will restart automatically.

Stop-start system ⇨ 175.

## Deactivation of electronic climate control system

Cooling, fan and automatic mode can be switched off by turning rotary knob  anticlockwise.

Activation by switching on the fan or pressing **AUTO**.

Heated rear window  ⇨ 23.

Heated exterior mirrors  ⇨ 20.

Heated windscreen  ⇨ 24.

Heated seats  ⇨ 30.

## Auxiliary heater

### Air heater

Quickheat is an electric auxiliary air heater which automatically warms up the passenger compartment more quickly.

## Air vents

### Adjustable air vents

At least two air vents must be open while cooling is on.

#### **⚠ Warning**

Do not attach any objects to the slats of the air vents. Risk of damage and injury in case of an accident.

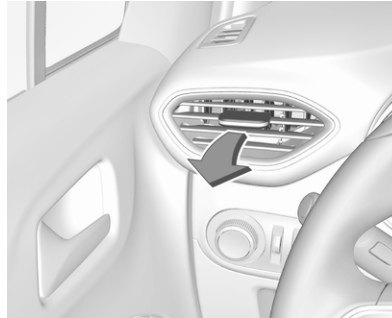
### Air vents in the instrument panel



Direct the flow of air by tilting and swivelling the slats.

To close the vent, swivel the slats inwards.

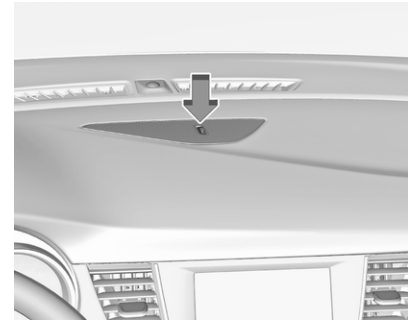
### Outer air vents in the instrument panel



Direct the flow of air by tilting and swivelling the slats.

To close the vent, swivel the slats outwards.

### Air vent on top of the instrument panel



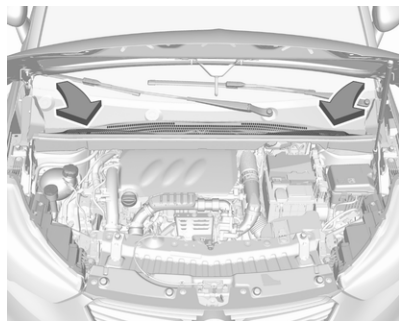
Close air flow by turning the thumb wheel to the front.

### Fixed air vents

Additional air vents are located beneath the windscreen and door windows and in the foot wells.

## Maintenance

### Air intake



The air intake in front of the windscreen in the engine compartment must be kept clear to allow air intake. Remove any leaves, dirt or snow.

### Cabin air filter

Change filter regularly for maximum effect.

More frequent passenger compartment air filter replacement may be needed, if you drive in areas with heavy traffic, poor air quality,

areas with high dust levels or which are sensitive to environmental allergens.

Passenger compartment air filter replacement may also be needed if there is reduced air flow, windows fogging up, or odors.

Your dealer can help to determine when it is the right time to replace the filter.

### Air conditioning regular operation

In order to ensure continuously efficient performance, cooling must be operated for a few minutes once a month, irrespective of the weather and time of year. Operation with cooling is not possible when the outside temperature is too low.

### Service

For optimal cooling performance, it is recommended to annually check the climate control system, starting three years after initial vehicle registration, including:

- functionality and pressure test
- heating functionality
- leakage check
- check of drive belts
- cleaning of condenser and evaporator drainage
- performance check
- cabin air filter check

## Driving and operating

<b>Driving hints</b> .....	<b>171</b>
Control of the vehicle .....	171
Steering .....	172
<b>Starting and operating</b> .....	<b>172</b>
New vehicle running-in .....	172
Ignition switch positions .....	172
Power button .....	173
Starting the engine .....	174
Overrun cut-off .....	175
Stop-start system .....	175
Parking .....	178
<b>Engine exhaust</b> .....	<b>179</b>
Exhaust filter .....	179
Catalytic converter .....	180
AdBlue .....	180
<b>Automatic transmission</b> .....	<b>183</b>
<b>Manual transmission</b> .....	<b>186</b>
<b>Brakes</b> .....	<b>187</b>
Antilock brake system .....	187
Parking brake .....	187
Brake assist .....	188
Hill start assist .....	188

<b>Ride control systems</b> .....	<b>188</b>
Electronic Stability Control and Traction Control system .....	188
Descent control system .....	190
Selective ride control .....	191
<b>Driver assistance systems</b> .....	<b>192</b>
Cruise control .....	192
Speed limiter .....	195
Forward collision alert .....	197
Active emergency braking .....	199
Front pedestrian protection .....	202
Parking assist .....	203
Advanced parking assist .....	206
Side blind spot alert .....	211
Panoramic view system .....	213
Rear view camera .....	216
Traffic sign assistant .....	217
Lane departure warning .....	218
Driver alert .....	220
<b>Fuel</b> .....	<b>221</b>
Fuel for petrol engines .....	221
Fuel for diesel engines .....	222
Refuelling .....	223
<b>Trailer hitch</b> .....	<b>224</b>
General information .....	224
Driving characteristics and towing tips .....	225
Trailer towing .....	225
Towing equipment .....	226

## Driving hints

### Control of the vehicle

#### Never coast with engine not running

Many systems will not function in this situation (e.g. brake servo unit, power steering). Driving in this manner is a danger to yourself and others.

All systems function during an Autostop.

Stop-start system ⇨ 175.

#### Pedals

To ensure the pedal travel is uninhibited, there must be no mats in the area of the pedals.

Use only floor mats, which fit properly and are fixed by the retainers on the driver side.

## Steering

If power steering assist is lost because the engine stops or due to a system malfunction, the vehicle can be steered but may require increased effort.

## Starting and operating

### New vehicle running-in

Do not brake unnecessarily hard for the first few journeys.

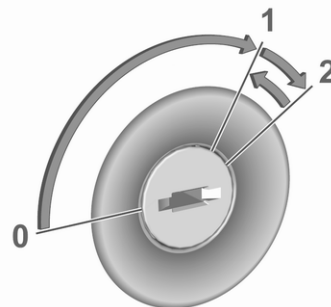
During the first drive, smoke may occur because of wax and engine oil evaporating off the exhaust system. Park the vehicle in the open for a while after the first drive and avoid inhaling the fumes.

During the running-in period, fuel and engine oil consumption may be higher.

Additionally, the cleaning process of the exhaust filter may take place more often.

Exhaust filter ⇨ 179.

## Ignition switch positions



- 0** : ignition off: some functions remain active until key is removed or driver's door is opened, provided the ignition was on previously
- 1** : ignition on power mode: ignition is on, control indicators illuminate and most electrical functions are operable
- 2** : engine start: release key after engine has been started

### Steering wheel lock

Remove key from ignition switch and turn steering wheel until it engages.

### ⚠ Danger

Never remove the key from ignition switch during driving as this will cause steering wheel lock.

## Power button



The electronic key must be inside the vehicle.

### Ignition on power mode without starting the engine

Press **Start/Stop** without operating clutch or brake pedal. Control indicators illuminate and most electrical functions are operable.

### Engine start

Operate the clutch pedal, the brake pedal and press **Start/Stop**. Release the button after starting procedure begins.

### Engine and ignition off

Press **Start/Stop** briefly in each mode or when engine is running and vehicle is stationary. Some functions remain active until driver's door is opened, provided the ignition was on previously.

### Emergency shut off during driving

If the engine needs to be switched off during driving in case of emergency, press **Start/Stop** for five seconds.

### ⚠ Danger

Switching off the engine during driving may cause loss of power support for brake and steering systems. Assistance systems and airbag systems are disabled. Lighting and brake lights will extinguish. Therefore power down

the engine and ignition while driving only when required in case of emergency.

### Steering wheel lock

The steering wheel lock activates automatically when:

- The vehicle is stationary.
- The ignition has been switched off.

To release steering wheel lock, open and close driver's door and switch the ignition on power mode or start the engine directly.

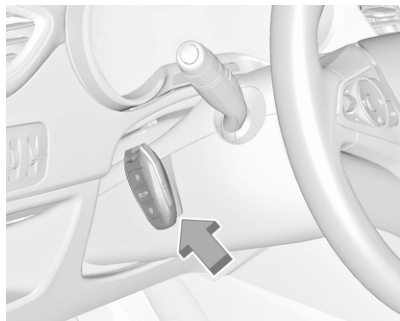
### ⚠ Warning

If the vehicle battery is discharged, the vehicle must not be towed or tow-started as the steering wheel lock cannot be disengaged.

### Operation in case of failure

If either the electronic key fails or the battery of the electronic key is weak, the Driver Information Centre may

display **No Remote Detected** or **Replace Battery in Remote Key** when you try to start the vehicle.



Hold the electronic key with buttons outside at the marking on the steering column cover as shown in the illustration.

Operate the clutch pedal, the brake pedal and press **Start/Stop**. Release the button after starting procedure begins.

This option is intended for emergencies only. Replace the electronic key battery as soon as possible ⇨ 8.

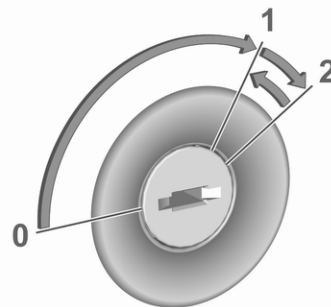
For unlocking or locking the doors, see fault in radio remote control unit or electronic key system ⇨ 10.

## Starting the engine

To start the engine during an Autostop:


- Manual transmission: during an Autostop, the engine can be started by depressing the clutch pedal ⇨ 175.
- Automatic transmission: during an Autostop, the engine can be started by releasing the brake pedal ⇨ 175.

## Vehicles with ignition switch



- Turn key to position 1.
- Move the steering wheel slightly to release the steering wheel lock.
- Manual transmission: operate clutch and brake pedal.
- Automatic transmission: operate brake pedal and move selector lever to **P** or **N**.
- Do not operate accelerator pedal.




- Diesel engines: wait until control indicator  extinguishes.
- Turn key to position 2 and release after the engine has been started.

### Vehicles with power button



- Manual transmission: operate clutch and brake pedal.
- Automatic transmission: operate brake pedal and move selector lever to **P** or **N**.
- Do not operate accelerator pedal.
- Press **Start/Stop** button. Release button after starting procedure begins.

- Diesel engine starts after control indicator  for preheating extinguishes.
- Before restarting or to switch off the engine when vehicle is stationary, press **Start/Stop** once more briefly.

### Starting the vehicle at low temperatures

Starting the engine without additional heaters is possible down to -25 °C for diesel engines and -30 °C for petrol engines.

Required is an engine oil with the correct viscosity, the correct fuel, performed services and a sufficiently charged vehicle battery.

With temperatures below -30 °C the automatic transmission requires a warming phase of approx. five minutes. The selector lever must be in position **P**.

### Turbo engine warm-up

Upon start-up, engine available torque may be limited for a short time, especially when the engine temperature is cold. The limitation is to allow the lubrication system to fully protect the engine.

### Overrun cut-off

The fuel supply is automatically cut off during overrun, i.e. when the vehicle is driven with a gear engaged but accelerator pedal is released.



Depending on driving conditions, the overrun cut-off may be deactivated.


### Stop-start system

The stop-start system helps to save fuel and to reduce the exhaust emissions. When conditions allow, it switches off the engine as soon as the vehicle is at a low speed or at a standstill, e.g. at a traffic light or in a traffic jam.

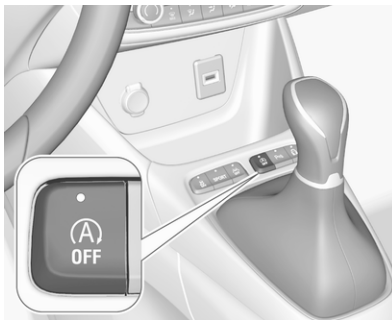
## Activation


The stop-start system is available as soon as the engine is started, the vehicle starts-off and the conditions as stated below in this section are fulfilled.

The system is ready to operate when the LED in the button  is not illuminated. To activate the system when the system is deactivated, press .

If the stop-start system is temporarily not available and the button  is pressed, the LED in the button flashes.

## Deactivation



Deactivate the stop-start system manually by pressing . The deactivation is indicated when the LED in the button illuminates.

## Autostop

### Vehicles with manual transmission

An Autostop can be activated at a standstill.

Activate an Autostop as follows:

- Depress the clutch pedal.
- Set the lever to neutral.
- Release the clutch pedal.

The engine will be switched off while the ignition stays on.

### Vehicles with automatic transmission


If the vehicle is at a standstill with depressed brake pedal, Autostop is activated automatically.

The engine will be switched off while the ignition stays on.

The stop-start system will be disabled on inclines of 12% or more.

## Indication



An Autostop is indicated by control indicator .

During an Autostop, the heating and brake performance will be maintained.

### Conditions for an Autostop

The stop-start system checks if each of the following conditions is fulfilled.

- The stop-start system is not manually deactivated.
- The driver's door is closed or the driver's seat belt is fastened.
- The vehicle battery is sufficiently charged and in good condition.
- The engine is warmed up.
- The engine coolant temperature is not too high.
- The engine exhaust temperature is not too high, e.g. after driving with high engine load.
- The ambient temperature is not too low or too high.
- The climate control system allows an Autostop.
- The brake vacuum is sufficient.
- The self-cleaning function of the exhaust filter is not active.
- The vehicle was driven at least at walking speed since the last Autostop.

Otherwise an Autostop will be inhibited.

### Notice

The Autostop may be inhibited for several hours after a battery replacement or reconnection.

Certain settings of the climate control system may inhibit an Autostop.

Air conditioning system ⇨ 161.

If an autostop is temporarily not available, (A) flashes green ⇨ 75.

Immediately after driving at a higher speed an Autostop may be inhibited.

### Vehicle battery discharge protection

To ensure reliable engine restarts, several vehicle battery discharge protection features are implemented as part of the stop-start system.

### Power saving measures

During an Autostop, several electrical features such as auxiliary electric heater or rear window heating are disabled or switched to a power saving mode. The fan speed of the climate control system is reduced to save power.

### Restart of the engine by the driver

#### Vehicles with manual transmission

Depress the clutch pedal without depressing the brake pedal to restart the engine.

#### Vehicles with automatic transmission

The engine is restarted in the following cases:

- brake pedal released while the selector lever in position **D** or **M**
- brake pedal released or selector lever in position **N** when selector lever is moved to position **D** or **M**
- selector lever moved to position **R**

### Restart of the engine by the stop-start system

The selector lever must be in neutral to enable an automatic restart.

If one of the following conditions occurs during an Autostop, the engine will be restarted automatically by the stop-start system:

- stop-start system manually deactivated
- driver's seat belt unfastened and driver's door opened
- engine temperature too low
- charging level of vehicle battery below a defined level
- brake vacuum not sufficient
- climate control system requests engine start
- air conditioning manually switched on





If an electrical accessory, e.g. a portable CD player, is connected to the power outlet, a brief power drop during the restart might be noticeable.

## Parking

### Warning

- Do not park the vehicle on an easily ignitable surface. The high temperature of the exhaust system could ignite the surface.

- Always apply the parking brake. Activate the parking brake without pressing the release button. Apply as firmly as possible on a downhill slope or uphill slope. Depress brake pedal at the same time to reduce operating force.
- Switch off the engine.
- If the vehicle is on a level surface or uphill slope, engage first gear or set the selector lever to position **P**. On an uphill slope, turn the front wheels away from the kerb.  
If the vehicle is on a downhill slope, engage reverse gear or set the selector lever to position **P**. Turn the front wheels towards the kerb.
- Close the windows.
- Remove the ignition key from the ignition switch or switch off ignition on vehicles with power button. Turn the steering wheel until the steering wheel lock is felt to engage.

- Lock the vehicle with  on the radio remote control.  
Or with electronic key system press marking on front door handles  8.
- Activate the anti-theft alarm system  17.
- The engine cooling fans may run after the engine has been switched off  233.

### Caution

After running at high engine speeds or with high engine loads, operate the engine briefly at a low load or run in neutral for approx. 30 seconds before switching off, in order to protect the turbocharger.

### Notice

In the event of an accident with airbag deployment, the engine is switched off automatically if the vehicle comes to a standstill within a certain time.

In countries with extremely low temperatures it may be necessary to park the vehicle without applied parking brake. Make sure to park the vehicle on a level surface.

Keys, locks ⇨ 6.

Laying-up the vehicle for a long period of time ⇨ 232.

## Engine exhaust

### Danger

Engine exhaust gases contain poisonous carbon monoxide, which is colourless and odourless and could be fatal if inhaled.



If exhaust gases enter the interior of the vehicle, open the windows. Have the cause of the fault rectified by a workshop.

Avoid driving with an open load compartment, otherwise exhaust gases could enter the vehicle.

## Exhaust filter

### Automatic cleaning process

The exhaust filter system filters soot particles out of the exhaust gases.



The start of saturation of the exhaust filter is indicated by the temporary illumination of  or , accompanied by a message in the Driver Information Centre.

As soon as the traffic conditions permit, regenerate the filter by driving at a vehicle speed of at least 40 mph until the control indicator extinguishes.

### Notice

On a new vehicle, the first exhaust filter regeneration operations may be accompanied by a burning smell, which is normal. Following prolonged operation of the vehicle at very low speed or at idle, water vapour can be emitted at the exhaust on acceleration. This does not affect the behaviour of the vehicle or the environment.

### Cleaning process not possible

If  or  stays on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message, this indicates that the exhaust filter additive level is too low.

The reservoir must be topped-up without delay. Seek the assistance of a workshop.

## Catalytic converter

The catalytic converter reduces the amount of harmful substances in the exhaust gases.

### Caution

Fuel grades other than those listed on pages ⇨ 221, ⇨ 278 could damage the catalytic converter or electronic components.

Unburnt fuel will overheat and damage the catalytic converter. Therefore avoid excessive use of the starter, running the fuel tank dry and starting the engine by pushing or towing.

In the event of misfiring, uneven engine running, a reduction in engine performance or other unusual problems, have the cause of the fault rectified by a workshop as soon as possible. In an emergency, driving can be continued for a short period, keeping vehicle speed and engine speed low.

## AdBlue

### General information

The selective catalytic reduction (BlueInjection) is a method to substantially reduce the nitrogen oxides in the exhaust emission. This is achieved by injecting a Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) into the exhaust system. The ammonia released by the fluid reacts with nitrous gases ( $\text{NO}_x$ ) from the exhaust and turns it into nitrogen and water.

The designation of this fluid is AdBlue®. It is a non-toxic, non-flammable, colourless and odourless fluid which consists of 32% urea and 68% water.

### ⚠ Warning

Avoid contact of your eyes or skin with AdBlue.

In case of eye or skin contact, rinse off with water.

### Caution

Avoid contact of the paintwork with AdBlue.

In case of contact, rinse off with water.

AdBlue freezes at a temperature of approx.  $-11\text{ }^{\circ}\text{C}$ . As the vehicle is equipped with an AdBlue preheater, the emissions reduction at low temperatures is ensured. The AdBlue preheater works automatically.

In some circumstances below the mentioned temperature, an error message appears in the Driver Information Centre. In this event, park the vehicle in a space with a higher ambient temperature until AdBlue is liquefied.

### Notice

Frozen and again liquefied AdBlue is usable without quality loss.


## Level warnings

The AdBlue consumption is approx. 1.5 l per 600 miles. The consumption can be higher depending on driving behaviour (e.g. high load or towing).

Depending on the calculated range of AdBlue, different messages are displayed in the Driver Information Centre. The messages and the restrictions are a legal requirement.


The first possible warning message appears at an AdBlue range below 1500 miles, shows up at each start and each 190 miles range reduction:

### **Top up AdBlue: Starting impossible in 1500 mi**

Additionally, control indicator  illuminates continuously and a chime sounds with every message pop-up.

At an AdBlue range below 380 miles, the following warning message is being displayed, shows up at each start and each 12 miles range reduction:

### **Top up AdBlue: Starting impossible in 380 mi**


Additionally, control indicator  flashes continuously and a chime sounds with every message pop-up.

#### **Notice**

In case of high AdBlue consumption, the Driver Information Centre may display this warning without the previous warning stages.

The last warning level is entered when the AdBlue tank is empty. Restart of the engine is not possible. The following warning message is being displayed and cannot be dismissed:

### **Top up AdBlue: Starting impossible**

Additionally, control indicator  flashes continuously and engine cannot be restarted until AdBlue tank is being filled with at least 5 l.

## High emission warnings

If the exhaust emission rises above a certain value, warnings similar to the range warnings will be displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

Requests to have the exhaust system checked and finally the announcement of the prevention of

an engine restart are displayed. These restrictions are a legal requirement.

Consult a workshop for assistance.

## Refilling AdBlue

### **Caution**

Only use AdBlue that complies with European standards DIN 70 070 and ISO 22241-1.

Do not use additives.

Do not dilute AdBlue.

Otherwise the selective catalytic reduction system could be damaged.

#### **Notice**

Whenever a filling pump with a nozzle for passenger cars is not available at a filling station, use only AdBlue bottles or canisters with a sealed refill adapter for refilling, to prevent splashback and overspill, and in order to ensure that the fumes from the tank are captured and do not emerge. AdBlue in bottles or canisters is available in many filling

stations and can be purchased e.g. at Vauxhall dealers and other retail outlets.

Since AdBlue has a limited durability, check the date of expiry before refilling.

### Notice

Refill the AdBlue tank to a level of at least 10 l, to ensure that the new AdBlue level is being detected.

In case AdBlue refill is not successfully detected:

1. Continuously drive the vehicle for ten minutes making sure that vehicle speed is always higher than 12 mph.
2. If AdBlue refill is detected successfully, AdBlue supply-driven warnings or limitations will disappear.

If AdBlue refill is still not detected, seek the assistance of a workshop.

If AdBlue must be refilled at temperatures below -11 °C, the refilling of AdBlue may not be detected by the system. In this

event, park the vehicle in a space with a higher ambient temperature until AdBlue is liquified.

### Notice

When unscrewing the protective cap from the filler neck, ammonia fumes may emerge. Do not inhale as the fumes have a pungent smell. The fumes are not harmful by inhalation.

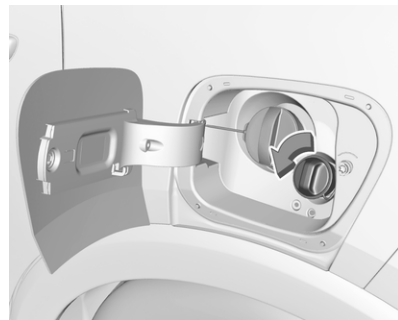
It is recommended to fill the AdBlue tank completely.

The vehicle must be parked on a level surface.

The filler neck for AdBlue is located behind the fuel filler flap, which is located at left rear side of the vehicle.

The fuel filler flap can only be opened if the vehicle is unlocked.

1. Switch off ignition.
2. Close all doors to avoid ammonia fumes entering the interior of the vehicle.
3. Release the fuel filler flap by pushing the flap ↗ 223.



4. Unscrew protective cap from the filler neck.
5. Open AdBlue canister.
6. Mount one end of the hose on the canister and screw the other end on the filler neck.
7. Lift the canister until it is empty, or until the flow from the canister has stopped. This can take up to five minutes.
8. Place the canister on the ground to empty the hose, wait 15 seconds.



9. Unscrew the hose from the filler neck.
10. Mount the protective cap and turn clockwise until it engages.

### Notice

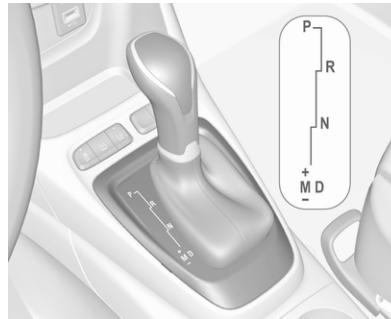
Dispose of AdBlue canister according to environmental requirements. Hose can be reused after flushing with clear water before AdBlue dries out.

## Automatic transmission

The automatic transmission permits automatic gearshifting (automatic mode) or manual gearshifting (manual mode).

Manual shifting is possible in manual mode by tapping the selector lever to + or -.

### Selector lever operation



Move the selector lever in the shifting gate as shown in the illustration above.

- P** : park position, wheels are locked, engage only if the vehicle is stationary and the parking brake is applied
- R** : reverse gear, engage only if the vehicle is stationary
- N** : neutral
- D** : automatic mode
- M** : manual mode
- +** : upshift in manual mode
- : downshift in manual mode

The selector lever is locked in **P** and can only be moved if the ignition is on and the brake pedal is applied.

The engine can only be started with the lever in position **P** or **N**. When position **N** is selected, press the brake pedal or apply the parking brake before starting.

Do not accelerate while engaging a gear. Never depress the accelerator pedal and brake pedal at the same time.

If a gear is engaged, the vehicle slowly begins to creep when the brake is released.

**Engine braking**

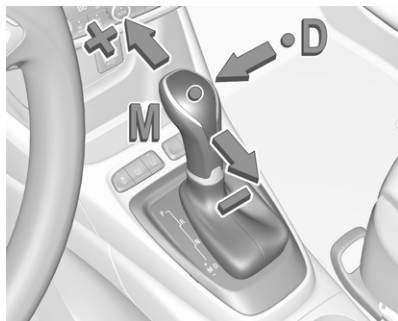
To utilise the engine braking effect, select a lower gear in good time when driving downhill, see manual mode.

**Rocking the vehicle**

Rocking the vehicle is only permissible if the vehicle is stuck in sand, mud or snow. Move the selector lever between **D** and **R** in a repeat pattern. Do not race the engine and avoid sudden acceleration.

**Parking**

Apply the parking brake and engage **P**.

**Manual mode**

Move selector lever out of position **D** towards the left in position **M**.

Tap selector lever towards **+** to shift to a higher gear.

Tap the selector lever towards **-** to shift to a lower gear.

If a higher gear is selected when vehicle speed is too low, or a lower gear when vehicle speed is too high, the shift is not executed. This can cause a message in the Driver Information Centre.

In manual mode, no automatic shifting to a higher gear takes place at high engine revolutions.

**Transmission display**

The mode or selected gear is shown in the Driver Information Centre.

**D** and the number of the engaged gear indicate automatic mode.

**M** and the number of the selected gear indicate manual mode.

**R** indicates reverse gear.

**N** indicates neutral position.

**P** indicates park position.

**Electronic driving programmes**

- Following a cold start, the operating temperature programme increases engine

speed to quickly bring the catalytic converter to the required temperature.

- Special programmes automatically adapt the shifting points when driving up inclines or down hills.
- In snowy or icy conditions or on other slippery surfaces, the electronic transmission control enables the driver to select manually first, second or third gear for starting off.

### Kickdown

Pressing down the accelerator pedal beyond the kickdown detent will lead to maximum acceleration independent of selected driving mode. The transmission shifts to a lower gear depending on engine speed.

### Interruption of power supply

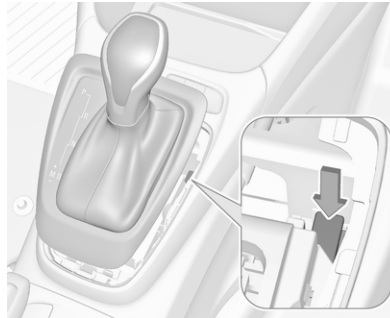
In the event of an interruption of power supply, the selector lever cannot be moved out of the **P** position.

If the vehicle battery is discharged, start the vehicle using jump leads.

Jump starting ⇨ 263.

If the vehicle battery is not the cause of the fault, release the selector lever.

1. Apply the parking brake.
2. Release the selector lever trim from the centre console. Poke with a finger into the leather socket below the selector lever and push the trim upwards.



3. Push down the button and move the selector lever out of **P**.

4. Mount the selector lever trim onto the centre console and refit.

5. Seek the assistance of a workshop.

### Fault

In the event of a fault a message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

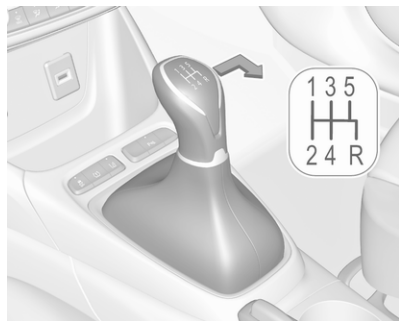
Vehicle messages ⇨ 82.

Electronic transmission control enables only third gear. The transmission no longer shifts automatically.

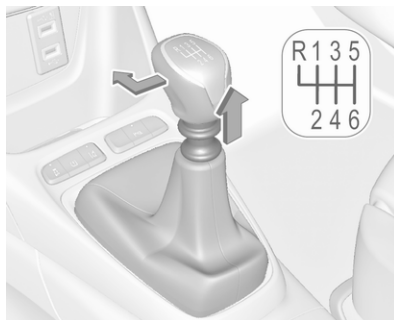
Do not drive faster than 62 mph.

Seek the assistance of a workshop.

## Manual transmission



To engage reverse gear on 5-speed transmission, with the vehicle stationary and engine at idle depress the clutch pedal, move the selector lever to the right and rear.



To engage reverse gear on 6-speed transmission, with the vehicle stationary and engine at idle depress the clutch pedal, pull the ring under the selector lever and move the selector lever quite to the left and front.

If the gear does not engage, set the selector lever to neutral, release the clutch pedal and depress again; then repeat gear selection.

Do not slip the clutch unnecessarily.

When operating, depress the clutch pedal completely. Do not use the pedal as a foot rest.

When clutch slip is detected for a specific time, the engine power will be reduced. A warning is displayed in the Driver Information Centre. Release the clutch.

### Caution

It is not advisable to drive with the hand resting on the selector lever.

Gear shifting ⇨ 72.

Stop-start system ⇨ 175.

## Brakes

The brake system comprises two independent brake circuits.

If a brake circuit fails, the vehicle can still be braked using the other brake circuit. However, braking effect is achieved only when the brake pedal is depressed firmly. Considerably more force is needed for this. The braking distance is extended. Seek the assistance of a workshop before continuing the journey.

When the engine is not running, the support of the brake servo unit disappears once the brake pedal has been depressed once or twice. Braking effect is not reduced, but braking requires significantly greater force. It is especially important to bear this in mind when being towed.

Control indicator  ↪ 72.

## Antilock brake system

Antilock brake system (ABS) prevents the wheels from locking.

ABS starts to regulate brake pressure as soon as a wheel shows a tendency to lock. The vehicle remains steerable, even during hard braking.

ABS control is made apparent through a pulse in the brake pedal and the noise of the regulation process.

For optimum braking, keep the brake pedal fully depressed throughout the braking process, despite the fact that the pedal is pulsating. Do not reduce the pressure on the pedal.

When braking in an emergency, the hazard warning flashers are switched on automatically depending on the force of deceleration. They are switched off automatically the first time you accelerate.

After starting off, the system performs a self-test which may be audible.



Control indicator  ↪ 72.

## Fault


### Warning

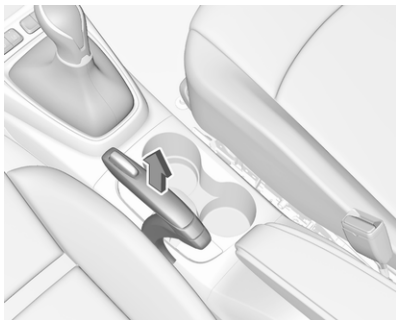
If there is a fault in the ABS, the wheels may be liable to lock due to braking that is heavier than normal. The advantages of ABS are no longer available. During hard braking, the vehicle can no longer be steered and may swerve.

Have the cause of the fault remedied by a workshop.

## Parking brake

### Warning

Before leaving the vehicle, check parking brake status. Control indicator  illuminates constantly when electric parking brake is applied.



### **⚠ Warning**

Always apply parking brake firmly without operating the release button, and apply as firmly as possible on a downhill or uphill slope.

To release the parking brake, pull the lever up slightly, press the release button and fully lower the lever.

To reduce the operating forces of the parking brake, depress the foot brake at the same time.

## **Brake assist**

If brake pedal is depressed quickly and forcefully, maximum brake force is automatically applied.

Operation of brake assist might become apparent by a pulse in the brake pedal and a greater resistance when depressing the brake pedal.

Maintain steady pressure on the brake pedal as long as full braking is required. Maximum brake force is automatically reduced when brake pedal is released.

## **Hill start assist**

The system helps prevent unintended movement when driving away on inclines.

When releasing the brake pedal after stopping on an incline, brakes remain on for further two seconds. The brakes release automatically as soon as the vehicle begins to accelerate.

## **Ride control systems**

### **Electronic Stability Control and Traction Control system**

Electronic Stability Control improves driving stability when necessary, regardless of the type of road surface or tyre grip.

As soon as the vehicle starts to swerve (understeer / oversteer), engine output is reduced and the wheels are braked individually.


Electronic Stability Control operates in combination with the Traction Control system. It prevents the driven wheels from spinning.


The Traction Control system is a component of the Electronic Stability Control.


The Traction Control system improves driving stability when necessary, regardless of the type of road surface or tyre grip, by preventing the driven wheels from spinning.

As soon as the driven wheels starts to spin, engine output is reduced and the wheel spinning the most is braked individually. This considerably improves the driving stability of the vehicle on slippery road surfaces.



Electronic Stability Control and the Traction Control system are operational after each engine start as soon as the control indicator  extinguishes.

When Electronic Stability Control or the Traction Control system operates,  flashes.

When Electronic Stability Control or the Traction Control system is not operational,  illuminates accompanied by a message in the Driver Information Centre.

After reconnecting the vehicle battery, the system needs a recalibration by driving a short distance.

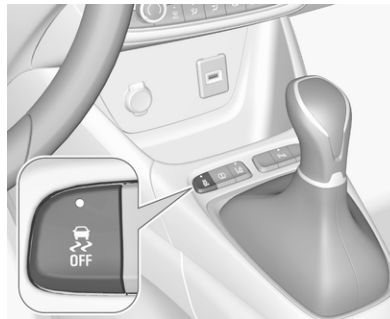
### Warning


Do not let this special safety feature tempt you into taking risks when driving.

Adapt speed to the road conditions.

Control indicator   73.


### Deactivation




Electronic Stability Control and the Traction Control system can be deactivated, everytime it is required: press .

Control indicator  illuminates  73.


A status message appears in the Driver Information Centre.

Electronic Stability Control and the Traction Control system are reactivated by pressing the  button again, by applying the brake or in the case that the vehicle is driven faster than 30 mph.

 extinguishes when Electronic Stability Control and the Traction Control system are reactivated.

Electronic Stability Control and the Traction Control system are also reactivated the next time the ignition is switched on.

### Fault

If there is a fault in the system, the control indicator  illuminates continuously and a message appears in the Driver Information Centre. The system is not operational.

Have the cause of the fault remedied by a workshop.

## Descent control system

The descent control system allows the vehicle to travel at a low speed without depressing the brake pedal. The vehicle will automatically decelerate to a low speed and remain at that speed when the system is activated. Some noise or vibration from the brake system may be apparent when the system is active.

### Caution

Use only when descending steep grades while driving off-road. Do not use when driving on normal road surfaces. Unnecessary usage of the DCS function, such as while driving on normal roads, may damage the brake system and the ESC function.



## Activation

### Notice

If hill descent control is active, active emergency braking is automatically deactivated.

The system is only available for slopes greater than 5%.





At speeds below approx. 30 mph, press . The system can also be activated when the vehicle is stationary with the engine running. The control indicator  in the instrument cluster is illuminated in green to show the system is activated.

When the vehicle starts its descent, the system controls the speed of the vehicle; accelerator and brake pedals can be released.



- If the gearbox is in first or second gear, the speed decreases and the control indicator in the instrument cluster flashes rapidly.
- If the gearbox is in neutral or the clutch pedal is depressed, the speed decreases and the control indicator in the instrument cluster flashes slowly.

If the system is operating, the brake lights automatically come on.

If the speed exceeds 18 mph, regulation is paused. The  indicator light in the instrument cluster changes to grey. However, the LED of the  button is still illuminated. Regulation is automatically resumed if the speed falls below 18 mph, the slope is greater than 5% and the pedal release conditions are met.




## Deactivation

Press  again until the LED in the button extinguishes. The green control indicator  in the instrument cluster extinguishes, too.

If the speed exceeds 43 mph, the system is automatically deactivated. The LED in the button extinguishes.

## Fault

If the green control indicator  does not illuminate or flashes after pressing the button, there is a fault in the system.

Seek the assistance of a workshop.

## Selective ride control

### Caution

The vehicle is designed to drive principally on-road, but it also enables driving off-road occasionally.

However, do not drive on terrain where the vehicle could be damaged due to obstacles, such

as stones among others and on terrain with steep inclines and poor grip.

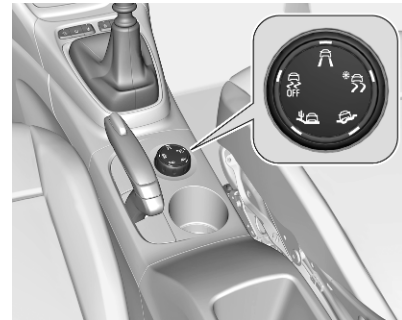
Do not cross waters.

### Caution






When driving off-road, sudden motion and manoeuvres can cause a collision or losing control.

Selective ride control is designed to optimise traction in low-grip conditions (snow, mud and sand).

It adapts to the terrain by acting on the front wheels, in doing so this saves the weight normally associated with a more conventional four wheel drive system.



Selective ride control allows to choose between five driving modes by turning the control:

- ESC off mode 
- standard mode 
- snow mode 
- mud mode 
- sand mode 

An LED illuminates and a status message appears in the Driver Information Centre to confirm the chosen mode.

**ESC off mode** 

The ESC and Traction Control are deactivated in this mode.

ESC and Traction Control are reactivated automatically from 30 mph or everytime the ignition is switched on.

**Standard mode** 

This mode is calibrated for a low level of wheel spin, based on the different types of grip generally encountered in normal day to day driving.

Everytime the ignition is switched off, the system is automatically reset to this mode.

**Snow mode** 

This mode adapts to the grip conditions encountered by each wheel when starting.

When advancing, the system optimises wheel spin to guarantee the best acceleration based on the available traction. Recommended in cases of deep snow and steep inclines.

**Mud mode** 

This mode allows considerable wheel spin at start-up for the wheel with the least grip, this removes mud and re-establishes traction.

Simultaneously, the wheel with the most grip is provided with the most torque possible.

**Sand mode** 

This mode allows a small amount of simultaneous wheel spin on the two drive wheels, enabling the vehicle to advance and reduce the risk of sinking.

**Caution**

Do not use the other modes on sand as the vehicle may become stuck.

**Driver assistance systems****Warning**

Driver assistance systems are developed to support the driver and not to replace the driver's attention.

The driver stays in full control of the vehicle and accepts full responsibility when driving the vehicle.

When using driver assistance systems, always take care regarding the current traffic situation and follow applicable traffic rules.

**Cruise control**

The cruise control can store and maintain speeds above 25 mph.

Additionally at least the third gear must be engaged on manual transmission.

Additionally position **D** or the second or a higher gear in position **M** must be selected on automatic transmission.

Deviations from the stored speeds may occur when driving uphill or downhill.

The system maintains the vehicle speed at the preset speed by the driver, without any action on the accelerator pedal.

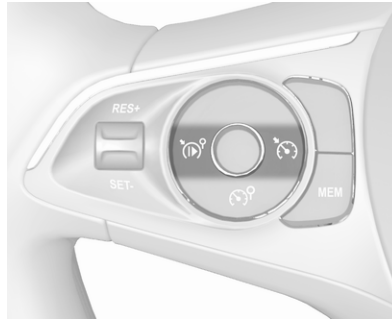
The preset speed can be exceeded temporarily by pressing the accelerator pedal firmly.



The status and preset speed is displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

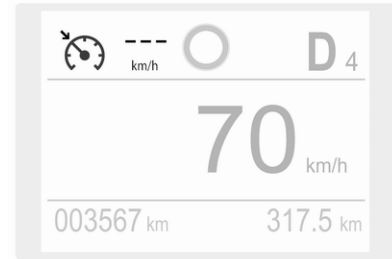
Do not use the cruise control if it is not advisable to maintain a constant speed.

Control indicator   $\rightarrow$  75.

### Switching on the system

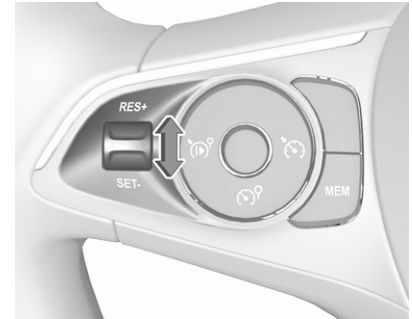


Press  on the steering wheel: symbol  and a message are indicated in the Driver Information Centre. The system is still not active.



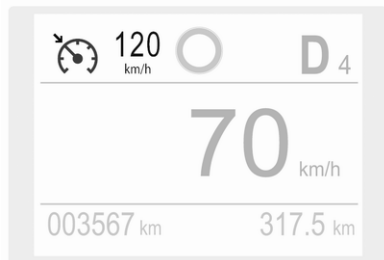
### Activation of the functionality

#### Setting speed by the driver



Accelerate to the desired speed and move thumb wheel briefly to **SET/-**. The current speed is stored and maintained. Accelerator pedal can be released.

The preset speed can then be changed by moving thumb wheel to **RES/+** to increase or to **SET/-** to decrease the speed. Move thumb wheel repeatedly to change speed in small steps, move and hold to change speed in large steps.



Speed value is indicated in the Driver Information Centre.

### Adopting speed by the speed limit recognition

The intelligent speed adaptation informs the driver when a speed limit is detected by the speed limit recognition. The detected speed limit can be used as new value for the cruise control.

Using the camera at the top of the windscreen, this system detects and reads speed limit and end of speed limit signs.

If the cruise control is active:

- in the uplevel Driver Information Centre the recognised speed limit will be displayed and **MEM** illuminates.
- in the midlevel Driver Information Centre the recognised speed limit will be displayed on the digital speed indication page along with an instruction message.

Press **MEM** on the steering wheel to request saving of the suggested speed.

Press **MEM** on the steering wheel once more to confirm and save the new speed setting.


This speed is the new value for the cruise control.

This function can be deactivated or activated in the personalisation menu ⇨ 83.

### Exceeding the set speed

Vehicle speed can be increased by depressing the accelerator pedal. When the accelerator pedal is released, the previously stored speed is resumed.

### Deactivation of the functionality

Press : cruise control is in pause mode and a message is displayed. The vehicle is driven without cruise control.

Cruise control is deactivated, but not switched off. Last stored speed remains in memory for later speed resume.


Cruise control is deactivated automatically when:


- The brake pedal is depressed.
- Vehicle speed is below 25 mph.
- The Traction Control system or Electronic Stability Control is operating.
- The manual transmission is in **N**, first or second gear.
- The automatic transmission is in position **M** and first gear.

### Resume stored speed

Move thumb wheel to **RES/+** at a speed above 25 mph. The stored speed will be obtained.

### Switching off the system

Press : the cruise control mode is deselected and the cruise control indication extinguishes in the Driver Information Centre.

Pressing  to activate the speed limiter deactivates cruise control.

Switching off the ignition cancels any programmed speed value.

### Fault

In the event of a cruise control fault, the speed is cleared resulting in flashing of the dashes.

The speed limit recognition may not operate correctly if traffic signs do not comply with the Vienna Convention on Road Signs and Signals.

### Speed limiter

The speed limiter prevents the vehicle from exceeding a preset maximum speed.

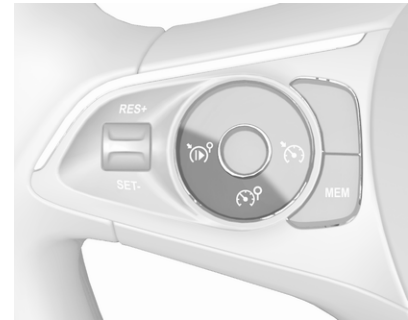
The maximum speed can be set at speeds above 18 mph.



The driver can accelerate the vehicle up to the preset speed. Deviations from the limited speed may occur when driving downhill.

The preset speed can be exceeded temporarily by pressing the accelerator pedal fully.

The status and preset speed limit are displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

### Switching on the system

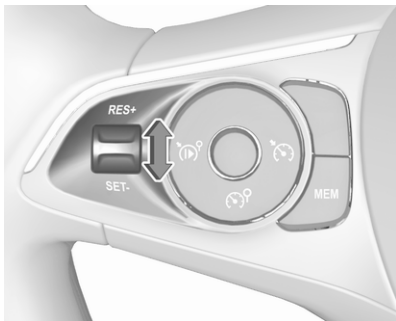


Press , symbol  and a message are displayed in the Driver Information Centre. The system is still not active.



## Activation of the functionality

### Setting speed by the driver

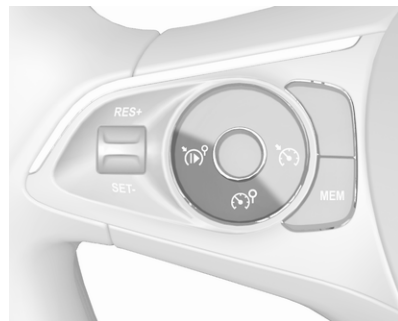


Accelerate to the desired speed and move thumb wheel briefly to **SET/-**. The current speed is stored as maximum speed.

The preset maximum speed can be set by pressing thumb wheel to **RES/+** to increase or **SET/-** to decrease the desired maximum speed. Move thumb wheel repeatedly to change speed in small steps, move and hold to change speed in large steps.



Speed value is indicated in the Driver Information Centre.



Press  to activate speed limiter.

### Adopting speed by the speed limit recognition

The intelligent speed adaptation informs the driver when a speed limit is detected by the speed limit recognition. The detected speed limit can be used as new value for the speed limiter.

Using the camera at the top of the windscreen, this system detects and reads speed limit and end of speed limit signs.


If the speed limiter is active:

- in the uplevel Driver Information Centre the recognised speed limit will be displayed and **MEM** illuminates.
- in the midlevel Driver Information Centre the recognised speed limit will be displayed on the digital speed indication page along with an instruction message.

Press **MEM** on the steering wheel to request saving of the suggested speed limit.

Press **MEM** on the steering wheel once more to confirm and save the new speed setting.

This speed is the new value for the speed limiter.


This function can be deactivated or activated in the personalisation menu  83.

### Exceeding the speed limit

In the event of an emergency, it is possible to exceed the speed limit by depressing the accelerator pedal fully. In this case the preset speed value flashes.

Release the accelerator pedal and the speed limiter function is reactivated once a speed lower than the speed limit is obtained.

### Deactivation of the functionality


Press , speed limiter is in pause mode and a message is displayed. The vehicle is driven without speed limiter.


Speed limiter is deactivated, but not switched off. Last stored speed remains in memory for later speed resume.

### Resume limit speed

Press . The stored speed limit will be obtained.

### Switching off the system

Press , the speed limiter mode is deselected and the speed limit indication extinguishes in the Driver Information Centre.

Pressing  to activate cruise control deactivates speed limiter.

The preset speed remains in the memory when the ignition is switched off.

### Fault

In the event of a speed limiter fault, the speed is cleared resulting in flashing of the dashes.

The speed limit recognition may not operate correctly if traffic signs do not comply with the Vienna Convention on Road Signs and Signals.

### Forward collision alert

The forward collision alert may help to avoid or reduce the harm caused by front-end crashes.

The forward collision alert uses the front camera in the windscreen to detect a preceding vehicle directly ahead, in your path.

If a vehicle directly ahead is approached too quickly, a warning chime and alert in the Driver Information Centre is provided.

### Warning

Forward collision alert is just a warning system and does not apply the brakes. When approaching a vehicle ahead too rapidly, there may not be enough time to avoid a collision.

The driver accepts full responsibility for the appropriate following distance based on traffic, weather and visibility conditions.



The complete attention of the driver is always required while driving. The driver must always be ready to take action and apply the brakes.

### Activation

Forward collision alert detects vehicles and operates automatically at all speeds above 3 mph and 53 mph. The system detects stationary vehicles if the speed does not exceed 50 mph.

### Alerting the driver

The driver is warned by following alerts:

- Symbol  illuminates and a warning message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre when the distance to the vehicle ahead gets to small.
- Symbol  illuminates, a warning message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre and a warning chime sounds, when a collision is imminent and immediate driver's action is required.

### Warning

Forward collision alert is just a warning system and does not apply the brakes. When approaching a vehicle ahead too rapidly, it may not provide you enough time to avoid a collision.

The driver accepts full responsibility for the appropriate following distance based on traffic, weather and visibility conditions.

The complete attention of the driver is always required while driving. The driver must always be ready to take action and apply the brakes.

### Caution

The colour lighting of this control indicator does not correspond to local traffic laws on following distance. The driver bears full responsibility for maintaining safe following distance according to



applicable traffic rules, weather and road conditions etc. at all times.

### Selecting the alert sensitivity

The alert sensitivity has to be set to close, normal or distant in the vehicle personalisation menu ⇨ 83.

The chosen setting will remain until it is changed. The alert timing will vary based on vehicle speed. The faster the vehicle speed, the farther away the alert will occur. Consider traffic and weather conditions when selecting the alert timing.

### Deactivation

The system can only be deactivated by deactivating the active emergency braking in the vehicle personalisation ⇨ 83.

### System limitations

Forward collision alert is designed to warn on vehicles, pedestrians and cyclists, but may react also to other objects.

In the following cases, forward collision alert may not detect a vehicle ahead or sensor performance is limited:

- driving on winding or hilly roads
- driving during nighttime
- weather limits visibility, such as fog, rain, or snow
- the sensor in the windscreen or the radar unit behind the front bumper are blocked by snow, ice, slush, mud, dirt etc.
- the windscreen is damaged or affected by foreign objects, e.g. stickers
- the bumper is damaged or affected by foreign objects, e.g. license plate support


### Active emergency braking

Active emergency braking can help to reduce the damage and injury from crashes with vehicles, pedestrians and obstacles directly ahead, when a collision can no longer be avoided either by manual braking or by steering. Before the active

emergency braking applies, the driver is warned by the forward collision alert or the front pedestrian protection alert.

Forward collision alert ⇨ 197.

Front pedestrian protection ⇨ 202.

Active emergency braking can be deactivated in the personalisation menu ⇨ 83. If deactivated,  illuminates in the instrument cluster and a warning message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

The feature uses various inputs (e.g. camera sensor, brake pressure, vehicle speed) to calculate the probability of a frontal collision.

### Warning

This system is not intended to replace the driver responsibility for driving the vehicle and looking ahead. Its function is limited to

supplemental use only to reduce the vehicle speed before a collision.

The system may not react to animals. After a sudden lane change, the system needs a certain time to detect the next preceding vehicle.

The driver must always be ready to take action and apply the brakes and steer to avoid collisions.

### Functionality

Active emergency braking is equipped with a front camera and operates in forward gear in the range between 3 mph and 53 mph. The system detects stationary vehicles only if the speed does not exceed 50 mph.


A precondition is that forward collision alert with front camera system is not deactivated in the vehicle personalisation menu ⇨ 83.

The system includes:

- emergency automatic braking
- forward looking brake assist

- forward collision alert
- front pedestrian protection

### Emergency automatic braking

After activation of brake preparation system and just before the imminent collision, this function automatically applies limited braking to reduce the impact speed of the collision or prohibit a crash. If active emergency braking is applied,  flashes in the instrument cluster. Depending on the situation, the vehicle may automatically brake moderately or hard. This front automatic braking can only occur if a vehicle or a pedestrian ahead is detected.

Forward collision alert ⇨ 197.

Front pedestrian protection ⇨ 202.

Emergency automatic braking may slow the vehicle to a complete stop to try to avoid a potential crash.

### Warning

Emergency automatic braking is an emergency crash preparation feature and is not designed to avoid crashes. Do not rely on the system to brake the vehicle. Emergency automatic braking will not brake outside of its operating speed range and only responds to detected vehicles and pedestrians.

### Forward looking brake assist

In addition to emergency automatic braking, the forward looking brake assist function makes the brake assist more sensitive. Therefore, pressing the brake pedal less strongly results in immediate hard braking. This function helps the driver brake quicker and harder before the imminent collision.

**⚠ Warning**

Active emergency braking is not designed to apply hard autonomous braking or to automatically avoid a collision. It is designed to reduce the vehicle speed before a collision. It may not react to animals. After a sudden lane change, the system needs a certain time to detect the next preceding vehicle.

The complete attention of the driver is always required while driving. The driver must always be ready to take action and apply the brakes and steer to avoid collisions.

The system is designed to work with all occupants wearing their seat belts.  
Forward collision alert ⇨ 197.  
Front pedestrian protection ⇨ 202.

**System limitations**

The system performance may be degraded or not available in the following cases:

- sensor covered with snow, ice, slush, mud or dirt
- windscreen damaged or smeared, with blurred view or covered with foreign items, e.g. stickers,
- damaged or deformed front bumper or front bumper covered with foreign items, e.g. stickers
- radar unit is out of its regular position resulting from an impact of the front bumper
- front camera out of its regular position
- automatic braking not available, e.g. brake discs cooling going on
- brake pedal continuously used for a long time, e.g. on a long downhill road
- winding or hilly roads
- during initialisation of the system, e.g. after the vehicle battery has been disconnected

- sun or lights shining into the front camera lens
- adverse environmental conditions, e.g. rain, fog, or snow
- vehicle ahead creating road spray

After an impact or when damages are visible have the vehicle checked by a workshop.

The system performance may be affected by:

- electronic stability control and traction control system in operation
- vehicle battery out of normal operation voltage
- wet road reflecting lights
- close vehicles ahead
- tractors, muddy vehicles or vehicles with a trailer
- banked roads
- poor lighting conditions
- sudden lighting changes
- vehicle modifications, e.g. tyres
- vehicle overloaded

If the system is temporarily affected and no driver action is required, no message is displayed.

Complete attention is always required while driving, and be ready to take action to avoid crashes.

We recommend to deactivate the system in the vehicle personalisation in the following cases:

- when towing a trailer or caravan
- when carrying long objects on roof bars or a roof rack
- when the vehicle is being towed
- when performing any maintenance with ignition on
- when the vehicle is fitted with snow chains
- when a spare wheel is fitted that is smaller than the other wheels
- before using an automatic car wash
- before placing the vehicle on a rolling road in a workshop
- if the windscreen has been damaged close to the camera
- if the front bumper has been damaged or deformed

- if the radar unit is out of its regular position resulting from an impact of the front bumper
- if the brake lights are not working

### Fault

In case the system requires a service, a message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

If the system does not work as it should do, vehicle messages are displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

Vehicle messages ⇨ 82.

### Front pedestrian protection

Front pedestrian protection may help to avoid or reduce the harm caused by front-end crashes with pedestrians when driving forward.

The system uses the front camera in the windscreen to detect a pedestrian directly ahead in your path.

Front pedestrian protection can detect and alert to pedestrians in a forward gear at speeds between 3 mph and 37 mph.

During nighttime driving, system performance is limited.

### Danger

Front pedestrian braking does not provide an alert or automatically brake the vehicle, unless it detects a pedestrian.

The system may not detect pedestrians, including children, when the pedestrian is not directly ahead, not fully visible, not standing upright, or when part of a group.

Front pedestrian protection includes:

- detecting front pedestrian ahead
- front pedestrian alert

Front pedestrian protection is activated together with forward collision alert.

Forward collision alert ⇨ 197.

### Detecting front pedestrian ahead

A pedestrian ahead up to a distance of approx. 40 m is indicated by a symbol in the instrument cluster.

## Front pedestrian alert

When approaching a detected pedestrian too quickly, a warning message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre. A warning chime is provided.

Cruise control or adaptive cruise control may be disengaged when the front pedestrian alert occurs.

## System limitations

In the following cases, front pedestrian protection may not detect a pedestrian ahead or sensor performance is limited:

- driving on winding or hilly roads
- driving in the dark
- weather limits visibility, such as fog, rain, or snow
- the sensor in the windscreen or the radar unit behind the front bumper is blocked by snow, ice, slush, mud, dirt or by foreign objects, e.g. stickers
- the windscreen is damaged
- the bumper is damaged

## Parking assist

### General information

When attaching a trailer or bicycle carrier to the trailer hitch, the parking assist is deactivated.

#### Warning

The driver bears full responsibility for the parking manoeuvre.

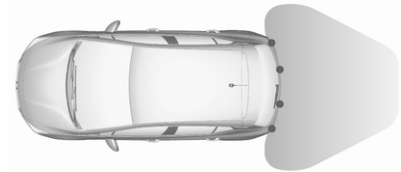
Always check the surrounding area when driving backwards or forwards while using parking assist system.

The parking assist makes parking easier by measuring the distance between the vehicle and obstacles. It informs and warns the driver by giving acoustic signals and display indication.

Acoustic signals are given on the side on which the vehicle is closer to an obstacle. The interval between the sounds becomes shorter as the vehicle gets closer to that obstacle.

When the distance is less than approx. 30 cm, the sound is continuous.


## Rear parking assist



The system operates with ultrasonic parking sensors in the rear bumper.

### Activation

The rear parking assist is activated when reverse gear is engaged.

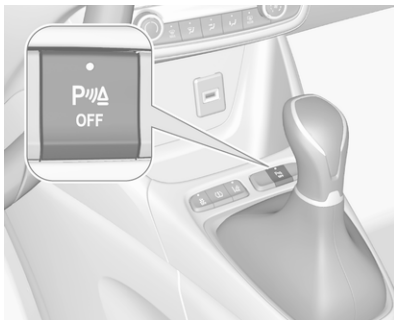
The system is ready to operate when the LED in the parking assist button  is not illuminated.

**Indication**

The system warns the driver with audible signals against potentially hazardous obstacles behind the vehicle in a distance range up to 50 cm.



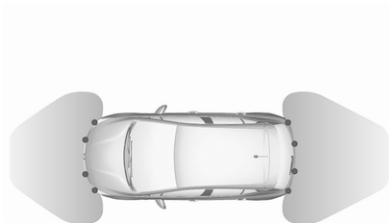
Additionally, the distance to rear obstacles is displayed by changing distance lines in the Info Display ↗ 79. When the obstacle is very close, ⚠ for danger is displayed in the screen.

**Deactivation**

The system is switched off when reverse gear is disengaged. Press **P OFF** to deactivate the system manually. The LED in the button illuminates when the system is deactivated. If the system has been deactivated manually, it is not reactivated automatically the next time the ignition is switched on.

**Front-rear parking assist**

It uses two different acoustic warning signals for the front and rear monitoring areas, each with a different tone frequency.



The system operates with ultrasonic parking sensors in the rear and front bumper.

**Activation**

The rear parking assist is activated when reverse gear is engaged.

In addition to the rear parking assist, the front parking assist is triggered when an obstacle is detected in front and the speed of the vehicle is still below 6 mph.

The system is ready to operate when the LED in the parking assist button **P OFF** is not illuminated.

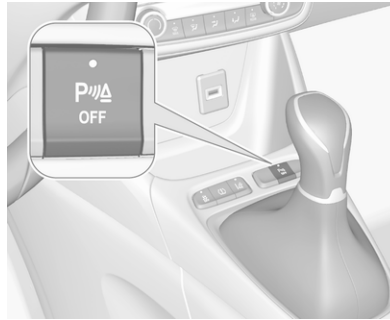
### Indication

The system warns the driver with audible signals against potentially hazardous obstacles in front of the vehicle and behind the vehicle by using the respective loudspeakers.



Additionally, the distance to rear and front obstacles is displayed by changing distance lines in the Info Display ↗ 79.

### Deactivation




The system is deactivated automatically when vehicle speed exceeds 6 mph or if the vehicle stops for more than three seconds in a forward gear or if no further obstacles are detected.

When the system is deactivated manually, the LED in the button illuminates.

If the system has been deactivated manually, it is not reactivated automatically the next time the ignition is switched on.

### System limitations

In the event of a fault or if the system does not work temporarily, e.g. because of high external noise level or other interference factors,  illuminates in the Driver Information Centre. A message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre and a warning chime sounds.

In the case of a permanent fault, seek the assistance of a workshop.

#### Warning

Under certain circumstances, various reflective surfaces on objects or clothing as well as external noise sources may cause the system to fail to detect obstacles.

Special attention must be paid to low obstacles which can damage the lower part of the bumper.

**Caution**


In the case of a severe failure of the vehicle with the need to stop the vehicle, the system is deactivated.

In the case of a gearbox failure, the parking assist system is not active, when reverse gear is engaged.

In the case of a loudspeaker failure, the audible signals may not be given.

Performance of the system can be reduced when sensors are covered, e.g. by ice or snow.

If a sensor is covered, a message is displayed indicating that the sensors have to be cleaned.

Performance of the parking assist system may be limited or the functionality may not be available at all if  illuminates or if the image shown on the Info Display is frozen or if the screen is black.

Performance of the parking assist system can be reduced due to heavy loading.

Special conditions apply if there are taller vehicles in the vicinity (e.g. off-road vehicles, mini vans, vans). Object identification and correct distance indication in the upper part of these vehicles cannot be guaranteed.

Objects with a very small reflection cross-section, e.g. objects of narrow size or soft materials, may not be detected by the system.

Parking assist systems do not detect objects outside the detection range, e.g. below the bumper or underneath the vehicle.

During a reverse parking manoeuvre, the system does not consider a mounted coupling ball bar. The driver has to consider this additional length.

**Notice**

It is possible that the sensor detects a non-existing object caused by echo disturbance from external

acoustic noise or mechanical misalignments (sporadic false warnings may occur).

Make sure that the front number plate is properly mounted (not bent and no gaps to the bumper on the left or right side) and the sensors are firmly in place. The performance of the parking assist may be reduced if the license plate is bent or a license plate support is used.

Low curbs and surface irregularities, e.g. on construction zones, are not detected by the system. The driver accepts responsibility.

**Advanced parking assist**** Warning**

The driver bears full responsibility for accepting the parking slot suggested by the system and the parking manoeuvre.

Always check the surrounding area in all directions when using the advanced parking assist.



The advanced parking assist measures a suitable parking slot while passing, calculates the trajectory and automatically steers the vehicle while parking.

Advanced parking assist provides assistance for the following manoeuvres:

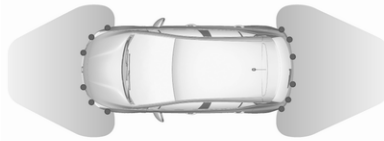
- entry into a parallel parking slot
- entry into a perpendicular parking slot
- exit from a parallel parking slot

The driver must control acceleration, braking and gear shifting, while steering is done automatically. The driver can take control at any time by gripping the steering wheel.

It may be necessary to move forwards and backwards more than once.

Instructions are given in the Info Display ↗ 79.

Advanced parking assist can only be activated when driving forwards.




Advanced parking assist is always combined with front-rear parking assist.


The system has six ultrasonic parking sensors each in both the rear and front bumper.

### Entry into a parallel parking slot

#### Activation

7" Colour Info Display: to search for a parking slot, activate the system by selecting **Park Assist** on the homepage of the touch screen. Then select **Enter parallel parking space**.

8" Colour Info Display: to search for a parking slot, activate the system by pressing . Select Driving functions on the touch screen and then **Park Assist**. Select **Enter parallel parking space**.

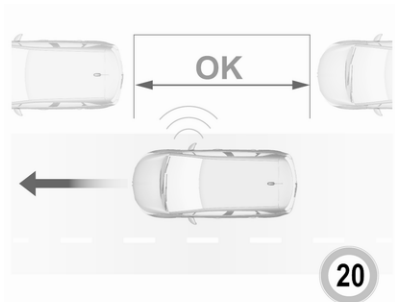
 illuminates in the instrument cluster to confirm the function.

Slow down the vehicle speed below 12 mph.

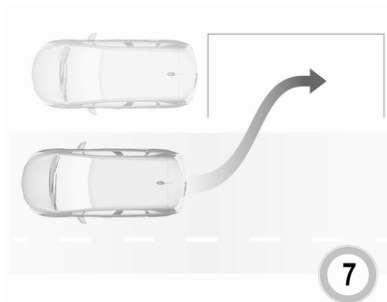
Select parking side by switching on the turn light on the respective side.

The allowed parallel distance between the vehicle and a row of parked cars is between 0.5 m and 1.5 m.

The system will not identify slots that are clearly smaller or larger than the vehicle.



When a free slot is detected, a visual feedback on the Colour Info Display and a first acoustic signal are given. Drive slowly forwards. When the second acoustic signal is given, stop the vehicle, select reverse gear, release the steering wheel and start moving without exceeding 4 mph.



Move forwards and backwards while observing the warnings of the parking assist until the end of manoeuvre is indicated. When finished,  $P_{\text{e}}$  extinguishes in the instrument cluster.

### Entry into a perpendicular parking slot

#### Activation

7" Colour Info Display: to search for a parking slot, activate the system by selecting **Park Assist** on the homepage of the touch screen. Then select **Enter perpendicular parking space**.

8" Colour Info Display: when search for a parking slot, activate the system by pressing  $P_{\text{e}}$ . Select Driving functions on the touch screen and then **Park Assist**. Select **Enter bay parking space**.

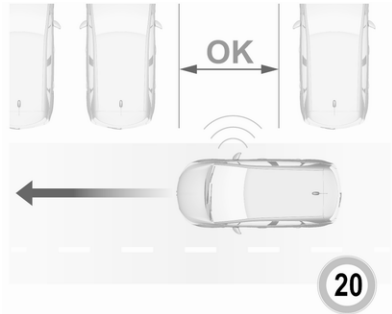
$P_{\text{e}}$  illuminates in the instrument cluster to confirm the function.

Slow down the vehicle speed below 12 mph.

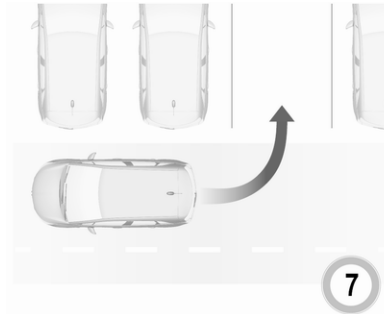
Select parking side by switching on the turn light on the respective side.

The allowed parallel distance between the vehicle and a row of parked cars is between 0.5 m and 1.5 m.

When several successive slots are found, the vehicle will be directed towards the last one.



When a free slot is detected, a visual feedback on the Colour Info Display and an acoustic signal are given. Stop the vehicle, select reverse gear, release the steering wheel and start moving without exceeding 4 mph.



Move forwards and backwards as instructed by observing the warnings of the parking assist and paying attention to the acoustic signals until the end of manoeuvre is indicated. When finished,  $P_0$  extinguishes in the instrument cluster.

During the parking manoeuvre, the system is automatically deactivated once the rear of the vehicle is within 50 cm of an obstacle.

## Exiting a parallel parking slot

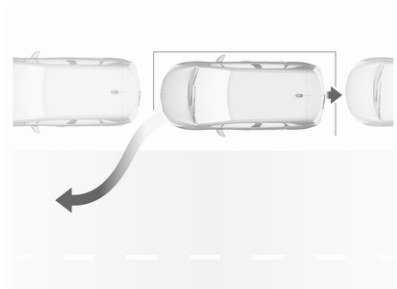
### Activation

7" Colour Info Display: when exiting a parallel parking slot, activate the system by selecting **Park Assist** on the homepage of the touch screen. Then select **Exit parallel parking space**.

8" Colour Info Display: when exiting a parallel parking slot, activate the system by pressing  $\text{Ⓔ}$ . Select Driving functions on the touch screen and then **Park Assist**. Select **Exit parallel parking space**.

Select exit side by switching on the respective turn light.

Engage reverse or forward gear, release the steering wheel and start moving without exceeding 3 mph.



Move forwards and backwards while observing the warnings of the parking assist until the end of manoeuvre is indicated. The manoeuvre is complete when the vehicle's front wheels are out of the parking slot and  $P_{\text{assist}}$  extinguishes in the instrument cluster.

After deactivation ensure to take control over the vehicle.

### Display indication

The instructions on the display show:

- general hints and warning messages
- the demand to stop the vehicle, when a parking slot is detected
- the direction of driving during the parking manoeuvre
- the demand to shift into reverse or first gear
- the demand to stop or to drive slowly
- the successful completion of the parking manoeuvre indicated by a pop-up symbol and a chime
- the cancelling of a parking manoeuvre

### Deactivation

Do not use the advanced parking assist when a temporary spare wheel is mounted. The rear view camera may not work properly.

The current park assist manoeuvre is cancelled via the button to return to the previous screen in the Colour Info

Display. To deactivate the system completely, press **P**▲ **Off** in the centre console.

The system is deactivated automatically:



- if the ignition is switched off
- if stalling the engine
- if no manoeuvre is started within 5 minutes of selection of the type of manoeuvre
- after a prolonged stop of the vehicle during a manoeuvre
- if the electronic stability control is triggered
- if the speed of the vehicle exceeds the stated limit
- when the driver interrupts movement of the steering wheel
- after four manoeuvre cycles
- on opening the driver's door
- if one of the front wheels encounters an obstacle
- parking manoeuvre successfully ended


Deactivation by the driver or by the system during manoeuvring will be indicated on the display. Additionally, an acoustic signal sounds.

The system is deactivated when a plug is connected to the power outlet of the trailer hitch.

Contact your dealer to switch off the system for a prolonged period.

## Fault

In the event of a fault,  flashes for a few seconds, accompanied by an acoustic signal. If the fault occurs during the use of the system,  extinguishes.

In the event of a fault in the power steering,  flashes in the instrument panel, accompanied by a message.

## Notice

Advanced parking assist system may not respond to changes in the available parking space after initiating a parking manoeuvre. The system may recognize an entry, a gateway, a courtyard or even a

crossing as a parking slot. Take care regarding the availability of the suggested parking slot.

## Side blind spot alert

The side blind spot alert system detects and reports objects on either side of the vehicle, within a specified blind spot zone. The system displays a visual alert in each exterior mirror, when detecting objects that may not be visible in the interior and exterior mirrors.

Side blind spot alert uses some of the advanced parking assist sensors which are located in the front and rear bumper on both sides of the vehicle.

### Warning

Side blind spot alert does not replace driver vision.


The system does not detect:


- vehicles outside the side blind zones which may be rapidly approaching
- pedestrians, cyclists or animals

Before changing a lane, always check all mirrors, look over the shoulder and use the turn light.

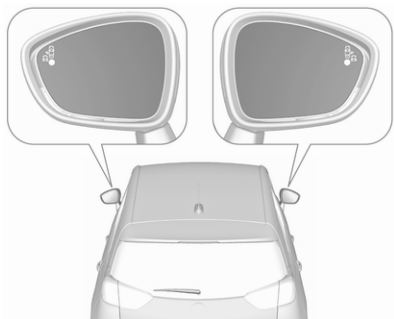
## Activation

7" Colour Info Display: select **Blind spot monitoring** on the Info Display and activate the function.

8" Colour Info Display: press . Select Driving functions on the Info Display and then **Blind spot monitoring**. Activate the function.

 illuminates continuously green in the instrument cluster to confirm the function.

### Functionality



When the system detects a vehicle in the side blind zone while driving forwards, an LED will illuminate in the relevant exterior mirror.

The LED comes on immediately when being passed.

The LED comes on after a delay when passing another vehicle slowly.

### Operation conditions

The following conditions must be fulfilled for proper operation:

- all vehicles are moving in the same direction and in adjacent lanes
- the vehicle speed is between 7 and 87 mph
- passing a vehicle with a speed difference of less than 6 mph
- another vehicle is passing with a speed difference of less than 15 mph
- the traffic flow is normal
- driving on a straight or slightly curved road

No alert will be given in the following situations:

- in the presence of non-moving objects, e.g. parked vehicles, barriers, street lamps, road signs
- in very dense traffic, when moving vehicles might be confused with a stationary object
- with vehicles moving in the opposite direction

- driving on a winding road or a sharp corner
- when passing or being passed by a very long vehicle, e.g. lorry, coach, which is at the same time detected at the rear in the blind spot angle and present in the driver's forward field of vision
- when passing too quickly

### Deactivation



The system is deactivated in the vehicle personalisation ↻ 83. <sup>a</sup> <sup>b</sup> extinguishes in the instrument cluster. Additionally, an acoustic signal sounds.

The state of the system is stored when switching off the ignition.

The system is switched off automatically when attaching a trailer or bike carrier to the trailer hitch.

Due to adverse weather conditions such as heavy rain, false detections may occur.

## Fault

In the event of a fault,  flashes for a few moments in the instrument cluster, accompanied by  and a display message. Seek the assistance of a workshop.

## Panoramic view system

This system allows views of the vehicle's surroundings to be displayed as a nearly 180° picture in the Info Display, like a bird's eye view.

### Warning

The panoramic view system does not replace driver vision. It will not display children, pedestrians, cyclists, crossing traffic, animals, or any other objects outside of the camera view area, e. g. below the bumper, or underneath the vehicle.

Do not drive or park the vehicle using only the panoramic view system.

Always check the surrounding of the vehicle before and during driving.

Displayed images may be further or closer than they appear. The area displayed is limited and objects that are close to either edge of the bumper or under the bumper are not displayed on the screen.

Depending on the load of the vehicle, the inclination of the vehicle may be changed including the view of the camera.

The system may use:

- rear camera, installed in the tailgate
- ultrasonic parking sensors in the rear bumper

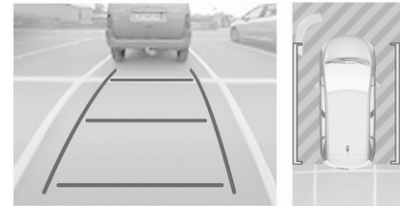
The screen is divided into two parts: on the right there is a view from above the vehicle, and on the left there are different views displayed.

## Activation

Panoramic view system is activated by:

- engaging reverse gear
- driving up to 6 mph

## Functionality



Different views can be selected in the left part of the display. Change the type of view by pressing the touch field in the left lower zone of the display:

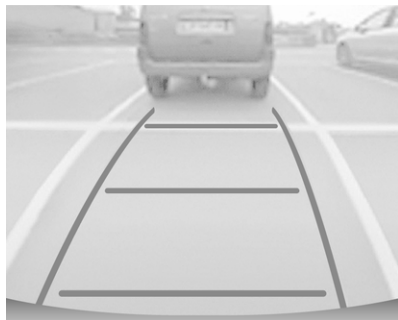
- Rear view
- Auto mode

- Zoom view
- 180° view

Auto mode is activated by default. In this mode, the system selects the best view, standard or zoom, to display according to the information from the ultrasonic parking sensors.

The state of the system is not kept in memory when the ignition is switched off.

### Rear view



The area behind the vehicle is displayed in the screen. The vertical lines represent the width of the

vehicle with mirrors unfolded. The direction of the lines changes with the steering angle.

The horizontal lines represent a distance of about 30 cm, 1m and 2 m beyond the rear bumper.

This view is available in auto mode or in the view selection menu.

### Auto mode

This mode is activated by default. If the vehicle is equipped with ultrasonic parking sensors, the automatic view changes from rear view or front view to a view from above, as an obstacle is approached during a manoeuvre.

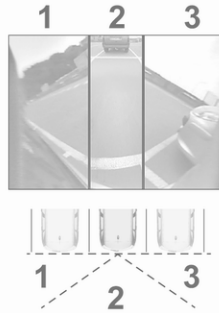
If the vehicle is not equipped with ultrasonic parking sensors, the view needs to be changed manually in the Info Display.

### Zoom view



The camera records the vehicle's surroundings during the manoeuvre in order to reconstruct a view from above the rear of the vehicle in its near surroundings, allowing the vehicle to be manoeuvred around obstacles nearby. This view is available with auto mode or in the view selection menu.



**180° view**

The 180° view facilitates reversing out of a parking bay, making it possible to see the approach of vehicles, pedestrians and cyclists. This view is not recommended for carrying out a complete manoeuvre. It is made up of three areas: left 1, centre 2 and right 3. This view is available from the view selection menu only.

**Deactivation**

Panoramic view system is deactivated when:

- driving faster than 6 mph
- seven seconds after disengaging reverse gear
- by pressing the icon ☒ in the left upper corner of the touch screen
- opening the tailgate

**System limitations****Caution**

For optimal operation of the system, it is important to keep the lenses of all cameras always clean. For the rear view camera, there is a washer nozzle which will be activated when the rear window washer is operating.

If manually cleaning the lenses of the cameras, rinse the lenses with water and wipe with a soft cloth.

Do not clean the lenses with a steam-jet or high-pressure jet cleaner.

The panoramic view system may not operate properly when:

- The surrounding is dark.
- The sun or the beam of headlights is shining directly into the camera lenses.
- Weather limits visibility, such as fog, rain, or snow.
- The camera lenses are blocked by snow, ice, slush, mud, dirt.
- The vehicle is towing an electrically connected trailer, bicycle carrier, etc.
- The vehicle had an accident. Contact a workshop.
- There are extreme temperature changes.

**Caution**

It is very important that any repair to the panoramic view system is performed accurately according to Vauxhall specifications. Otherwise, the system may not

work properly and there is a risk of unexpected behaviour and / or messages from the system.

### Rear view camera

The rear view camera assists the driver when reversing by displaying a view of the area behind the vehicle.

The view of the camera is displayed in the Info Display.

#### ⚠ Warning

The rear view camera does not replace driver vision. Note that objects that are outside the camera's field of view and the parking assist sensors, e.g. below the bumper or underneath the vehicle, are not displayed.

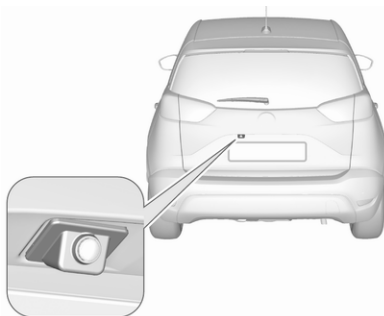
Do not reverse or park the vehicle using only the rear view camera.

Always check the surrounding of the vehicle before and during driving.

### Switching on

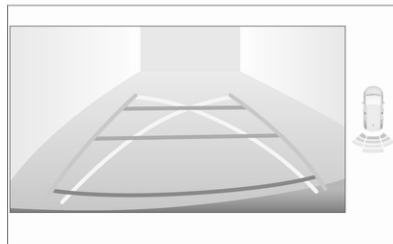
Rear view camera is automatically activated when reverse gear is engaged.

### Functionality



The area displayed by the camera is limited. The distance of the image that appears on the display differs from the actual distance.

### Guidelines



The vertical lines represent the width of the vehicle without mirrors and the general direction of the vehicle. The horizontal lines represent a distance of about 30 cm, 1m and 2 m beyond the rear bumper. The crossing curves represent the maximum turning circle.

### Deactivation of guidelines

Guidelines can be deactivated in the Info Display. Select **Settings** ▶ **Vehicle** ▶ **Collision detection** ▶ **Rear view camera guide lines** ▶ **O**.

Info Display ⇨ 79.

Vehicle personalisation ⇨ 83.

## Switching off

The camera is switched off when a certain forward speed is exceeded or if reverse gear is disengaged for approx. 10 seconds.

## System limitations

The rear view camera may not operate properly when:

- The surrounding is dark.
- The beam of headlights is shining directly into the camera lenses.
- During nighttime driving.
- Weather limits visibility, such as fog, rain, or snow.
- The camera lenses are blocked by snow, ice, slush, mud, dirt. Clean the lense, rinse with water, and wipe with a soft cloth.
- The tailgate will be opened.
- A trailer or bike carrier is attached to the trailer hitch.
- The vehicle had a rear end accident.
- There are extreme temperature changes.

## Traffic sign assistant

### ⚠ Warning

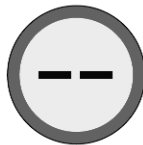
The actual traffic sign always takes priority over the traffic sign displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

## Speed limit

Using the camera at the top of the windscreen and the vehicle's integrated navigation system, this system provides speed limits and end of speed limits in the Driver Information Centre.

The system can be activated or deactivated in the vehicle personalisation ⇨ 83.

If the system is activated but does not detect a speed limit sign, the following sign is displayed:



If the vehicle exceeds the speed limit by at least 3 mph, the speed limit displayed flashes about ten seconds.

Speed limiter ⇨ 195.

Cruise control ⇨ 192.

## Updating navigation map data

To maintain the performance of the system, the navigation map should be updated in periodical intervals. A navigation map update is available twice per year.

Further information is available in the Infotainment system section.

## Other traffic signs

The system detects traffic signs and displays them in specific page of the Driver Information Centre.



This system can be activated or deactivated in the vehicle personalisation ⇨ 83.

Driver Information Centre ⇨ 76.

### System limitations

Traffic sign assistant may not operate properly when:

- Driving on winding or hilly roads.
- Driving during nighttime.
- Driving with snow chains.
- Driving with a trailer.
- The area of the windscreen, where the front camera is located, is not clean or affected by foreign items, e.g. stickers.
- The visibility is limited because of the weather, such as fog, rain, or snow.
- The sun is shining directly into the camera lens.
- Traffic signs are completely or partially covered or difficult to discern.
- Traffic signs are incorrectly mounted or damaged.

- Traffic signs do not comply with the Vienna Convention on Road Signs and Signals.
- The navigation map data is outdated.

### Caution

The system is intended to help the driver within a defined speed range to recognise certain traffic signs. Do not ignore traffic signs which are not displayed by the system.

Do not let this special feature tempt you into taking risks when driving.

Always adapt speed regarding road, traffic and weather conditions.

The driver assistance systems do not relieve the driver from full responsibility for vehicle operation.


When driving abroad make sure the vehicle uses the speed unit of the respective country. If necessary, select the correct units in the Info Display.

### Lane departure warning

The lane departure warning system supports the driver to avoid unintended leaving of the lane. The front camera observes road edges, as well as the lane markings between which the vehicle is driving. If the vehicle approaches a road edge or a lane marking, the system warns the driver.

Unintended lane departure is not assumed by the system when the turn lights are operated and during few seconds after turn lights have been switched off.

No warning will be issued with a dynamic driving, i.e. pressure on the brake or accelerator pedal.

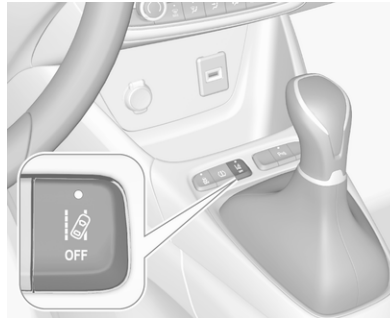
When the system recognises an unintended lane departure, the control indicator  flashes yellow. Simultaneously a chime sound is activated.




### Warning

This system is a driving aid that cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.


### Activation




The lane departure warning system is activated by pressing . The system is switched on if the LED in the button is not illuminated.

The system is only operable at vehicle speeds above 40 mph.

### Deactivation

To deactivate the system, press  until LED in the button is illuminated.

### Fault

In the event of a fault,  appears in the Driver Information Centre, accompanied by a display message. Seek the assistance of a workshop.

### System limitations

The system performance may be affected by:

- covered camera by snow, ice, slush, mud, dirt, or affected by windscreen damage or foreign items, e.g. stickers
- close vehicles ahead
- banked roads
- winding or hilly roads
- poor lighting conditions
- sudden lighting changes
- shining sun directly into the camera lens
- adverse environmental conditions, e.g. heavy rain, fog, or snow
- vehicle modifications, e.g. tyres
- roads with poor lane markings

## Driver alert

The driver alert system monitors the driving time and the vigilance of the driver. Monitoring the vigilance of the driver is based on the trajectory variations of the vehicle compared to the lane markings.

The system cannot replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver. Taking a break is recommended as soon as feeling tired or at least every two hours. Do not drive when feeling tired.

## Activation or Deactivation

The system can be activated or deactivated in the vehicle personalisation ⇨ 83.

The state of the system stays in memory when the ignition is switched off.

## Driving time alert

The driver gets notified by a pop-up reminder symbol 🕒 in the Driver Information Centre simultaneously with an acoustic alert if the driver has not taken a break after two hours of

driving at a speed above 40 mph. The alert is repeated hourly until the vehicle is stopped, no matter how vehicle speed evolves.

The counting of driving time alert is reset when the ignition has been switched off for a few minutes.

## Driver drowsiness detection

The system monitors the driver's level of vigilance. A camera in the windscreen detects variations in trajectory compared to the lane markings. This system is particularly suited to fast roads (speed higher than 40 mph).

If the trajectory of the vehicle suggests a certain level of drowsiness or inattention by the driver, the system triggers the first level of alert. The driver is notified by a message and an audible signal is given.

After three first level alerts, the system triggers a new alert with a message, accompanied by a more pronounced audible signal.

In certain driving conditions (poor road surface or strong winds), the system may give alerts independent of the driver's level of vigilance.

The driver drowsiness detection is reinitialised when the ignition has been switched off for a few minutes or the speed remains below 40 mph for a few minutes.

## System limitations

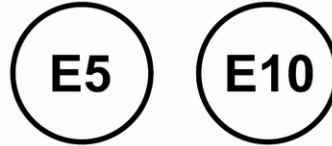
In the following situations, the system may not operate properly or even not operate at all:

- poor visibility caused by inadequate lighting of the roadway, falling snow, heavy rain, dense fog etc.
- dazzle caused by headlamps of oncoming vehicles, low sun, reflections on damp roads, leaving a tunnel, alternating shade and light etc.
- no lane markings detected or multiple lane markings due to roadworks
- close vehicles ahead
- winding roads or narrow roads

- advanced lane keep assist is active
- covered camera by snow, ice, slush, mud, dirt, or affected by windscreen damage or foreign items, e.g. stickers

## Fuel

### Fuel for petrol engines



Only use unleaded fuel that complies with European standard EN 228 or E DIN 51626-1 or equivalent.

The engine is capable of running with fuel that contains up to 10% ethanol (e.g. named E10).

Use fuel with the recommended octane rating. A lower octane rating can reduce engine power and torque and slightly increases fuel consumption.

### Caution

Do not use fuel or fuel additives that contain metallic compounds such as manganese-based additives. This may cause engine damage.

### Caution

Use of fuel with a lower octane rating than the lowest possible rating could lead to uncontrolled combustion and engine damage.

The engine specific requirements regarding octane rating are given in the engine data overview ↗ 278. A country-specific label at the fuel filler flap can supersede the requirement. In certain countries, the use of a particular fuel, e.g. a specific octane rating, may be required to ensure proper engine operation.

## Fuel for diesel engines

The diesel engines are compatible with bio-fuels that conform to current and future European standards and can be obtained from filling stations:



Diesel fuel that meets standard EN590 mixed with a biofuel that meets standard EN14214 (possibly containing up to 7% Fatty Acid Methyl Ester).



Diesel fuel that meets standard EN16734 mixed with a biofuel that meets standard EN14214 (possibly containing up to 10% Fatty Acid Methyl Ester).



Paraffinic diesel fuel that meets standard EN15940 mixed with a biofuel that meets standard EN14214 (possibly containing up to 7% Fatty Acid Methyl Ester).



The use of B20 or B30 fuel meeting standard EN16709 is possible. However, this use, even occasional, requires strict application of the special servicing conditions referred to as "Arduous conditions".

For further information, contact a workshop.

### Caution

The use of any other type of (bio) fuel (vegetable or animal oils, pure or diluted, domestic fuel etc.) is strictly prohibited (risk of damage to the engine and fuel system).

### Notice

The only diesel additives authorised for use are those that meet the B715000 standard.

### Low temperature operation

At temperatures below 0 °C, some diesel products with biodiesel blends may clog, freeze or gel, which may affect the fuel supply system. Starting and engine operation may not work properly. Make sure to fill winter grade diesel fuel at ambient temperatures below 0 °C.

Arctic grade diesel fuel can be used at extremely low temperatures below -20 °C. Using this fuel grade in warm or hot climates is not recommended and may cause engine stalling, poor starting or damage on the fuel injection system.



## Refuelling



### **⚠ Danger**

Before refuelling, switch off ignition and any external heaters with combustion chambers.

Follow the operating and safety instructions of the filling station when refuelling.

### **⚠ Danger**

Fuel is flammable and explosive. No smoking. No naked flames or sparks.

If you can smell fuel in your vehicle, have the cause of this remedied immediately by a workshop.

A label with symbols at the fuel filler flap is indicating the allowed fuel types. In Europe the pump nozzles of the filling stations are marked with these symbols. Refuel only the allowed fuel type.

### **Caution**

In case of misfuelling, do not switch on ignition.

Fuel filler flap is located at left rear side of vehicle.



The fuel filler flap can only be opened if the vehicle is unlocked. Open the fuel filler flap by pushing the flap.

### **Petrol and diesel refuelling**

To open, turn the cap slowly anticlockwise.



The fuel filler cap can be attached to the hook on the fuel filler flap.

Place the nozzle in straight position to the filler neck and press with slight force to insert.

To refuel, switch on pump nozzle.

After the automatic cut-off, the tank can be topped up by operating the pump nozzle a maximum of two more times.

### Caution

Wipe off any overflowing fuel immediately.

To close, turn the fuel filler cap clockwise.

Close the flap and allow it to engage.

### Fuel filler cap

Only use genuine fuel filler caps.

Diesel-engined vehicles have special fuel filler caps.

## Trailer hitch

### General information

Only use towing equipment that has been approved for your vehicle. If using non-factory fitted towing equipment, deactivation of the hands-free tailgate operation may be required ↗ 15.

Entrust retrofitting of towing equipment to a workshop. It may be necessary to make changes that affect the cooling system, heat shields or other equipment.

The bulb outage detection function for trailer or bike carrier brake light cannot detect a partial bulb outage. E.g. in case of four bulbs with a power of 5 W each, the function only detects light outage when only a single 5 W light remains or none remain.

LED lights are not suitable for the wiring harness of this trailer hitch.

Fitting of towing equipment could cover the opening of the towing eye. If this is the case use the coupling ball

bar for towing. Always keep the coupling ball bar in the vehicle to have it on hand if needed.

## Driving characteristics and towing tips

Before attaching a trailer, lubricate the coupling ball. However, do not do so if a stabiliser, which acts on the coupling ball, is being used to reduce snaking movements.

During trailer towing do not exceed a speed of 50 mph. A maximum speed of 60 mph is only appropriate if an oscillation damper is used and the permissible gross trailer weight does not exceed the vehicle's curb weight.

For trailers with low driving stability and caravan trailers, the use of an oscillation damper is strongly recommended.

If the trailer starts snaking, drive more slowly, do not attempt to correct the steering and brake sharply if necessary.

When driving downhill, drive in the same gear as if driving uphill and drive at a similar speed.

Adjust tyre pressure to the value specified for full load ⇨ 283.

## Trailer towing

### Trailer loads

The permissible trailer loads are vehicle and engine-dependent maximum values which must not be exceeded. The actual trailer load is the difference between the actual gross weight of the trailer and the actual coupling socket load with the trailer coupled.

The permissible trailer loads are specified in the vehicle documents. In general, they are valid for inclines up to 12%.

The permissible trailer load applies up to the specified incline and at sea level. Since engine power decreases as altitude increases due to the air becoming thinner, therefore reducing climbing ability, the permissible gross train weight also decreases by 10% for every 1000 m of altitude. The gross train weight does not have to be

reduced when driving on roads with slight inclines (less than 8%, e.g. motorways).

The permissible gross train weight must not be exceeded. This weight is specified on the identification plate ⇨ 275.

### Vertical coupling load

The vertical coupling load is the load exerted by the trailer on the coupling ball. It can be varied by changing the weight distribution when loading the trailer.

The maximum permissible vertical coupling load of 65 kg is specified on the towing equipment identification plate and in the vehicle documents. For vehicles with engine DV5RC and automatic transmission, the maximum permissible vertical coupling load is 55 kg. Always aim for the maximum load, especially in the case of heavy trailers. The vertical coupling load should never fall below 25 kg.

### Rear axle load

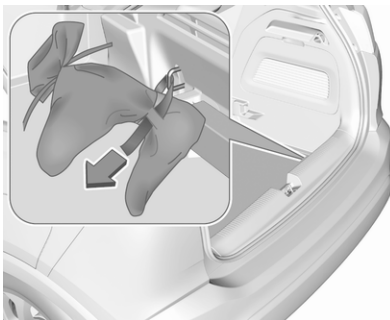
When the trailer is coupled and the towing vehicle fully loaded, the permissible rear axle load (see identification plate or vehicle documents) may be exceeded by 60 kg, the gross vehicle weight rating must not be exceeded. If the permissible rear axle load is exceeded, a maximum speed of 60 mph applies.

### Towing equipment

<b>Caution</b>
When operating without a trailer, remove the coupling ball bar.

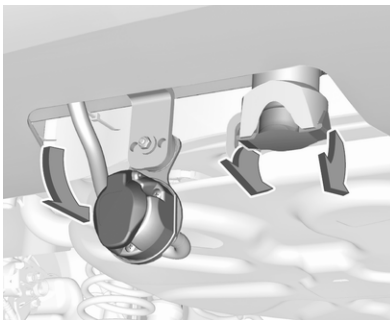
### Stowage of coupling ball bar

The bag with the coupling ball bar is stowed on the rear floor cover in the load compartment.




Place the strap through the rear right lashing eye, wrap around twice and tighten the strap to secure the bag.

### Fitting the coupling ball bar

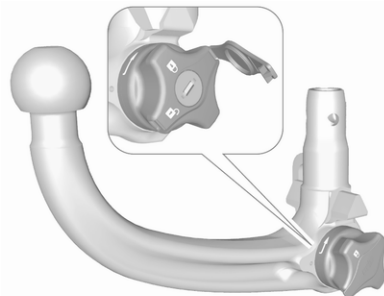



Swivel the connecting socket downwards. Remove the sealing plug from the opening for the coupling ball bar and stow it.

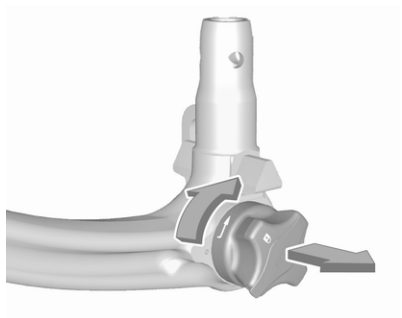
### Checking the tensioning of the coupling ball bar

- Red marking on rotary knob must point towards green marking on coupling ball bar.
- The gap between the rotary knob and the coupling ball bar must be approx. 6 mm.
- The key must be in position .

Otherwise, the coupling ball bar must be tensioned before being inserted:

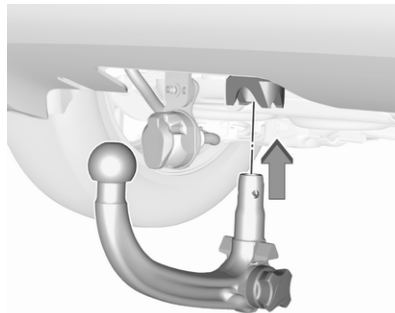


- Unlock coupling ball bar by turning key to position .



- Pull out rotary knob and turn clockwise as far as it will go.

### Inserting the coupling ball bar



Insert the tensioned coupling ball bar in the opening and push firmly upwards until it audibly engages.

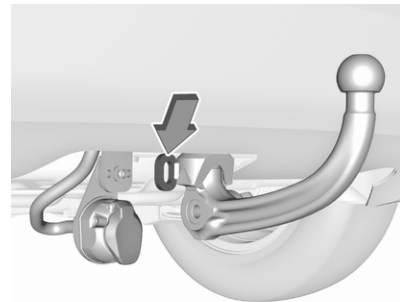
The rotary handle snaps back into its original position resting against the coupling ball bar without a gap.

#### Warning

Do not touch rotary handle during insertion.

Lock the coupling ball bar by turning the key to position . Remove the key and close the protective flap.

### Eye for break-away stopping cable



Attach breakaway stopping cable to eye.

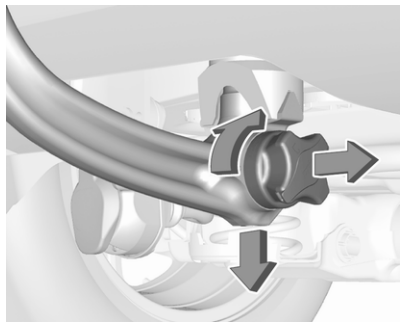
### Checking the correct installation of the coupling ball bar


- Green marking on rotary knob must point towards green marking on coupling ball bar.
- There must be no gap between the rotary handle and the coupling ball bar.
- The coupling ball bar must be firmly engaged in the opening.
- The coupling ball bar must be locked and the key removed.

**⚠ Warning**

Towing a trailer is permitted only when a coupling ball bar is fitted correctly. If the coupling ball bar does not engage correctly, seek the assistance of a workshop.

**Dismounting the coupling ball bar**



Open the protective flap and turn the key to position  to unlock the coupling ball bar.

Pull out rotary handle and turn clockwise as far as it will go. Pull out coupling ball bar downwards.

Insert sealing plug in opening.

Swivel the connecting socket upwards.

Stow the coupling ball bar in the bag and secure by fixing the strap through the rear right lashing eye. Wrap around twice and tighten the strap to secure the bag.

## Vehicle care

<b>General Information</b> .....	<b>229</b>
Accessories and vehicle modifications .....	229
Vehicle storage .....	232
End-of-life vehicle recovery .....	233
<b>Vehicle checks</b> .....	<b>233</b>
Performing work .....	233
Bonnet .....	234
Engine oil .....	234
Engine coolant .....	235
Washer fluid .....	236
Brakes .....	236
Brake fluid .....	236
Vehicle battery .....	237
Diesel fuel system bleeding .....	239
Wiper blade replacement .....	239
<b>Bulb replacement</b> .....	<b>240</b>
Halogen headlights .....	240
LED headlights .....	242
Front fog lights .....	243
Tail lights .....	243
Side turn lights .....	247
Number plate light .....	248
Interior lights .....	248

<b>Electrical system</b> .....	<b>248</b>
Fuses .....	248
<b>Vehicle tools</b> .....	<b>248</b>
Tools .....	248
<b>Wheels and tyres</b> .....	<b>249</b>
Winter tyres .....	249
Tyre designations .....	249
Tyre pressure .....	250
Tyre deflation detection system .....	251
Tread depth .....	251
Changing tyre and wheel size .....	252
Wheel covers .....	252
Tyre chains .....	253
Tyre repair kit .....	253
Wheel changing .....	256
Spare wheel .....	258
<b>Jump starting</b> .....	<b>263</b>
<b>Towing</b> .....	<b>264</b>
Towing the vehicle .....	264
Towing another vehicle .....	265
<b>Appearance care</b> .....	<b>266</b>
Exterior care .....	266
Interior care .....	268
Floor mats .....	268

## General Information

### Accessories and vehicle modifications

We recommend the use of genuine parts and accessories and factory approved parts specific for this vehicle type. We cannot assess or guarantee reliability of other products - even if they have a regulatory or otherwise granted approval.

Any modification, conversion or other changes made to standard vehicle specifications (including, without limitation, software modifications, modifications of the electronic control units) may invalidate the warranty offered by Vauxhall.

Furthermore, such changes may affect driver assistance systems, may impact fuel consumption, CO<sub>2</sub> emissions and other emissions of the vehicle and cause the vehicle to no longer conform to the operating permit, impacting the validity of your vehicle registration.

**Caution**

Access to the diagnostic socket associated with the on-board electronics is reserved for qualified technicians and approved tools.

**Caution**

When transporting the vehicle on a train or on a recovery vehicle, the mud flaps might be damaged.

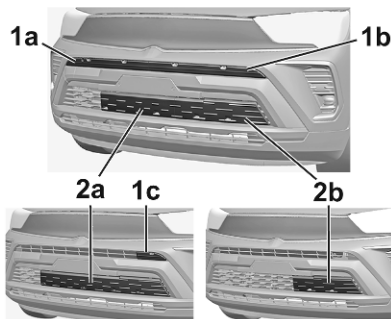
**Cold protection covers**

In order to prevent the accumulation of snow at the radiator cooling fan, it is recommended to install removable protection covers.

**Caution**

The cold protection covers must be removed when one of the following conditions occurs:

- The ambient temperature is above 5 °C.
- The vehicle is driven at speeds above 75 mph.



The cold protection covers consist of one, three or four parts depending on engine and equipment with trailer hitch.

**Engines EB2FA or EB2F**

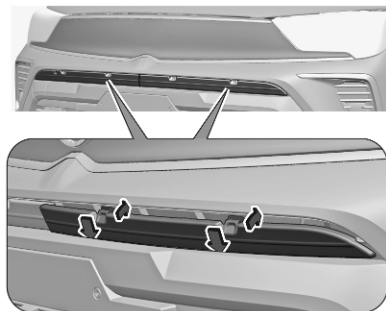
Use 2b only.

**All other engines**

- For vehicles with trailer hitch, use 1a, 1b, 2a and 2b.
- For vehicles without trailer hitch, use 1c, 2a and 2b.

**Installation**

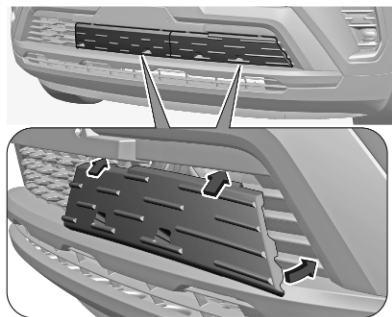
Upper grille:



- Place the lower part of the protection cover against the lower part of the grille.
- Insert the flaps of the protection cover into the slat and press firmly until they audibly engage.

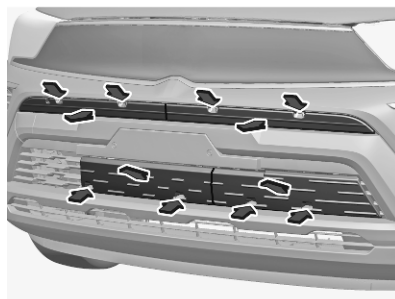
Lower grille:





- Insert the flaps of the protection cover into the slats.
- Press the lower part of the protection cover against the slat until the lower flaps audibly engage.

### Deinstallation



#### Upper grille:

- Insert a finger into the opening and press down the flap.
- Pull the protection cover downwards and remove it.

#### Lower grille:

- Insert a finger into the opening and press the flap upwards.
- Pull the protection cover upwards and remove it.

### Mobile phones and CB radio equipment

The vehicle specific installation instructions and the operating guidelines of the mobile phone and hands-free manufacturer must be observed when installing and operating a mobile telephone. Failure to do so could invalidate the vehicle type approval (EU directive 95/54/EC).

Recommendations for fault-free operation:

- Professionally installed exterior antenna to obtain the maximum range possible.
- Maximum transmission power 10 W.
- Installation of the phone in a suitable spot, consider the area in which the airbag inflates ↷ 38.

Seek advice on predetermined installation points for the external antenna or equipment holder and ways of using devices with a transmission power exceeding 10 W.

Use of a hands-free attachment without external antenna with mobile telephone standards GSM 900/1800/1900 and UMTS is only permitted if the maximum transmission power of the mobile telephone is 2 W for GSM 900 or 1 W for the other types.

For reasons of safety, do not use the phone while driving. Even use of a hands-free set can be a distraction while driving.

### Warning

Operation of radio equipment and mobile telephones which fail to meet above mentioned mobile telephone standards is only permitted using an antenna located outside of the vehicle.

### Caution

Mobile telephones and radio equipment may lead to malfunctions in the vehicle electronics when operated inside

the vehicle with no exterior antenna, unless the above mentioned regulations are observed.

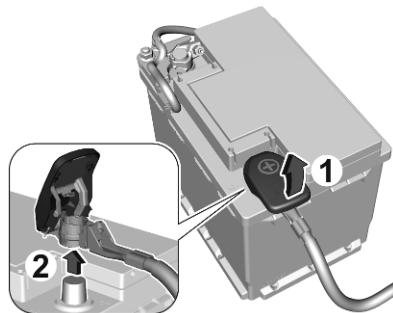
## Vehicle storage

### Storage for a long period of time

If the vehicle is to be stored for several months:

- Wash the vehicle.
- Have the wax in the engine compartment and underbody checked.
- Clean and preserve the rubber seals.
- Fill up fuel tank completely.
- Change the engine oil.
- Drain the washer fluid reservoir.
- Check the coolant antifreeze and corrosion protection.
- Adjust tyre pressure to the value specified for full load.

1. Park the vehicle in a dry, well ventilated place. Engage first or reverse gear or set selector lever to **P**. Prevent the vehicle from rolling.
2. Do not apply the parking brake.
3. Switch off ignition and all electrical consumers.
4. Wait four minutes.
5. Open the bonnet, close all doors and lock the vehicle.



6. Lift the plastic cover of the vehicle battery's positive terminal in the engine compartment.
7. Raise the lever fully and remove clamp from the terminal.

Anti-theft alarm system ⇨ 17.

### Putting back into operation

When the vehicle is to be put back into operation:

1. Connect the clamp to the positive terminal of the vehicle battery in the engine compartment.
  2. Initialise the power windows ⇨ 22.
- Check tyre pressure.
  - Fill up the washer fluid reservoir.
  - Check the engine oil level.
  - Check the coolant level.
  - Fit the number plate if necessary.

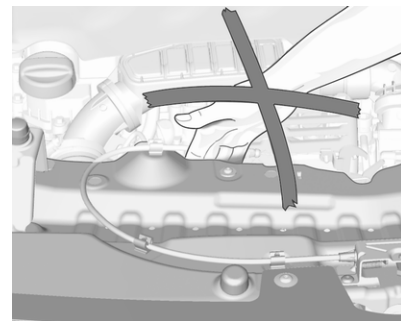
### End-of-life vehicle recovery

Information on end-of-life vehicle recovery centres and the recycling of end-of-life vehicles is available on our website, where legally required. Only entrust this work to an authorised recycling centre.



## Vehicle checks

### Performing work



#### Warning

Only perform engine compartment checks when the ignition is off.

The cooling fan may start operating even if the ignition is off.

**⚠ Danger**

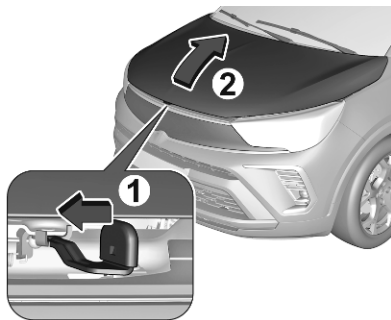
The ignition system uses extremely high voltage. Do not touch.

**Bonnet****Opening**

Open the left front door.



Pull the lever and return it to its original position.



Move the safety catch sideways to the left vehicle side and open the bonnet. Secure the bonnet support.

**Closing**

Before closing the bonnet, press the support into the holder. Lower the bonnet and let it fall into the latch from a low height (20-25 cm). Check that the bonnet is engaged.

**Caution**

Do not press the bonnet into the latch to avoid dents.

**Engine oil**

Check the engine oil level manually on a regular basis to prevent damage to the engine. Ensure that the correct specification of engine oil is used.

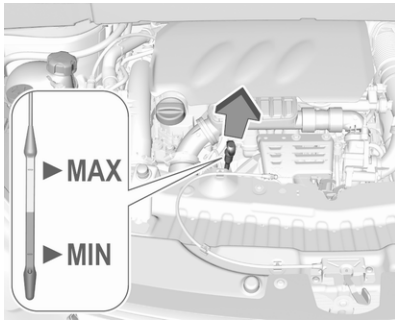
Recommended fluids and lubricants ⇨ 273.

The maximum engine oil consumption is 0.6 l per 600 miles.

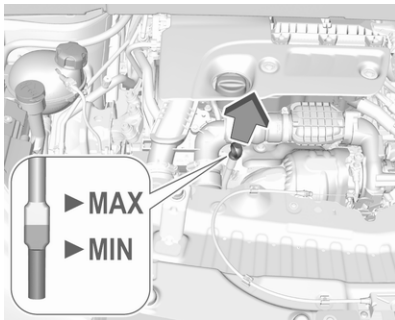
Check with the vehicle on a level surface. The engine must be at operating temperature and switched off for at least five minutes.

**Caution**

It is the owner's responsibility to maintain the proper level of an appropriate quality engine oil in the engine.

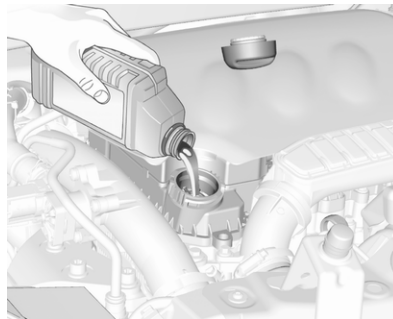


Pull out the dipstick, wipe it clean, reinsert it fully, pull out and read the engine oil level.



Different dipsticks are used depending on engine variant.

When the engine oil level has dropped to the **MIN** mark, top up the engine oil. We recommend the use of the same grade of engine oil that was used at last change.



The engine oil level must not exceed the **MAX** mark on the dipstick.

### Caution

Overfilled engine oil must be drained or suctioned out. If the engine oil exceeds the maximum level, do not start the vehicle and contact a workshop.

Capacities ⇨ 282.

Fit the cap on straight and tighten it.

### Engine coolant

The factory filled coolant provides freeze protection down to approx. -37 °C.

### Caution

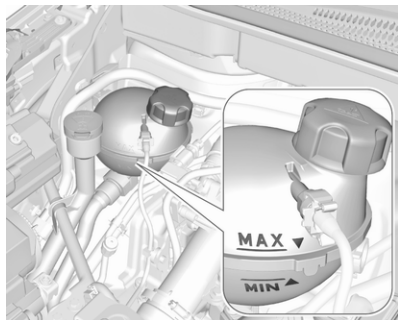
Only use approved antifreeze.

Coolant and antifreeze ⇨ 273.

### Coolant level

### Caution

Too low a coolant level can cause engine damage.



If the cooling system is cold, the coolant level should be above the **MIN** mark. Top up if the level is low.

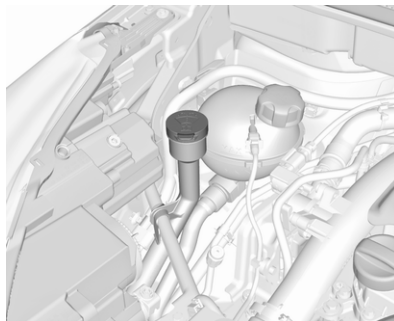
### **⚠ Warning**

Allow the engine to cool before opening the cap. Carefully open the cap, relieving the pressure slowly.

To top up, use a 1:1 mixture of released coolant concentrate mixed with clean tap water. If no coolant concentrate is available, use clean tap water. Install the cap tightly. Have

the coolant concentration checked and have the cause of the coolant loss remedied by a workshop.

## Washer fluid



Fill with clean water mixed with a suitable quantity of approved windscreen washer fluid which contains antifreeze.

### **Caution**

Only washer fluid with a sufficient antifreeze concentration provides protection at low temperatures or a sudden drop in temperature.

Washer fluid ⇨ 273.

## Brakes

In the event of minimum thickness of the brake lining, a squealing noise sounds during braking.

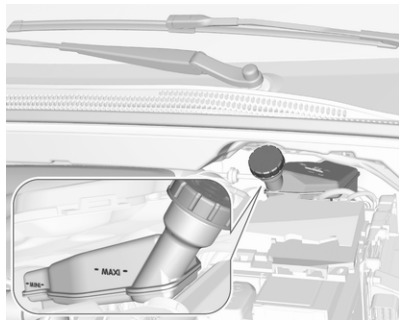
Continued driving is possible but have the brake lining replaced as soon as possible.

Once new brake linings are installed, do not brake unnecessarily hard for the first few journeys.

## Brake fluid

### **⚠ Warning**

Brake fluid is poisonous and corrosive. Avoid contact with eyes, skin, fabrics and painted surfaces.



The brake fluid level must be between the **MIN** and **MAX** marks.

If fluid level is below **MIN** seek the assistance of a workshop.

Brake fluid ↻ 273.

## Vehicle battery

The vehicle battery is maintenance-free provided that the driving profile allows sufficient charging of the battery. Short-distance-driving and frequent engine starts can discharge the battery. Avoid the use of unnecessary electrical consumers.



Batteries do not belong in household waste. They must be disposed of at an appropriate recycling collection point.

Laying up the vehicle for more than four weeks can lead to battery discharge. Disconnect the clamp from the negative terminal of the vehicle battery.

Ensure the ignition is switched off before connecting or disconnecting the vehicle battery.

Battery discharge protection ↻ 94.

Anti-theft alarm system ↻ 17.

## Replacing the vehicle battery

### Notice

Any deviation from the instructions given in this section may lead to temporary deactivation or disturbance of the stop-start system.

When the vehicle battery is being replaced, ensure that there are no open ventilation holes in the vicinity of the positive terminal. If a ventilation hole is open in this area, it must be closed off with a dummy cap, and the ventilation in the vicinity of the negative terminal must be opened.

Ensure that the vehicle battery is always replaced by the same type of battery.

The vehicle battery has to be replaced by a workshop.

Stop-start system ↻ 175.

## Charging the vehicle battery

### ⚠ Warning

On vehicles with stop-start system, ensure that the charging potential does not exceed 14.6 V when using a battery charger. Otherwise the vehicle battery may be damaged.

Jump starting ↻ 263.

## Discharge protection

### Battery voltage

When the vehicle battery voltage is running low, a warning message will appear in the Driver Information Centre.

When the vehicle is being driven, the load reduction function temporarily deactivates certain functions, e.g. the heated rear window.

The deactivated functions are reactivated automatically as soon as conditions permit.

### Idle boost

If charging of the vehicle battery is required due to battery condition, the power output of the generator must be increased. This will be achieved by an idle boost which may be audible.

A message appears in the Driver Information Centre.

### Power outlet

The power outlets are deactivated in the event of low vehicle battery voltage.

## Power saving mode

This mode deactivates electrical consumers to avoid excessive discharging of the vehicle battery. These consumers, such as the infotainment system, windscreen wipers, low beam headlights, courtesy light, etc. can be used for a total maximum time of about 40 minutes after ignition is switched off.

### Deactivating power saving mode

Power saving mode is deactivated automatically when the engine is restarted. Run the engine for a sufficient charge:

- for less than ten minutes to use the consumers for approx. five minutes
- for more than ten minutes to use the consumers for up to approx. 30 minutes

## Warning label



Meaning of symbols:

- No sparks, naked flames or smoking.
- Always shield eyes. Explosive gases can cause blindness or injury.
- Keep the vehicle battery out of reach of children.
- The vehicle battery contains sulphuric acid which could cause blindness or serious burn injuries.



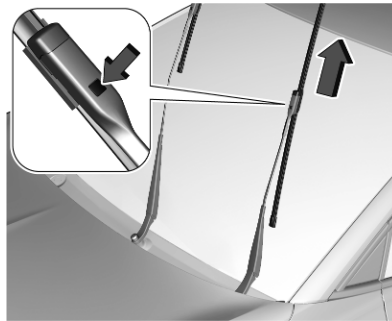
- See the Owner's Manual for further information.
- Explosive gas may be present in the vicinity of the vehicle battery.

### Diesel fuel system bleeding

If the tank has been run dry, the diesel fuel system must be bled. Switch on the ignition three times for 15 seconds at a time. Then crank the engine for a maximum of 40 seconds. Repeat this process after no less than 5 seconds. If the engine fails to start, seek the assistance of a workshop.

## Wiper blade replacement

### Windscreen



Switch off ignition.

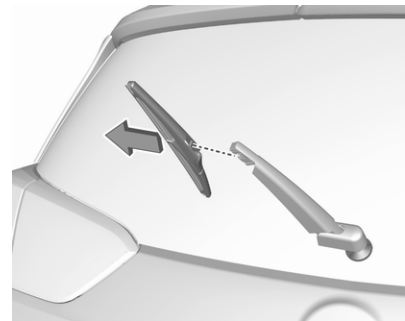
Within one minute after switching off ignition, operate the wiper lever to position the wiper blades vertically on the windscreen.

Lift the wiper arm until it stays in the raised position, press button to disengage the wiper blade and remove.

Attach the wiper blade slightly angled to the wiper arm and push until it engages.

Lower wiper arm carefully.

### Rear window



Lift wiper arm. Disengage wiper blade as shown in illustration and remove.

Attach the wiper blade slightly angled to the wiper arm and push until it engages.

Lower wiper arm carefully.

## Bulb replacement

Before replacing a bulb, ensure that all exterior and interior lights and the ignition are switched off. All doors have to be closed.

Only hold a new bulb at the base. Do not touch the bulb glass with bare hands.

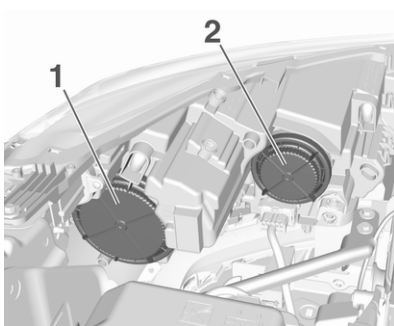
Use only the same bulb type for replacement.

Replace headlight bulbs from within the engine compartment.

### Bulb check

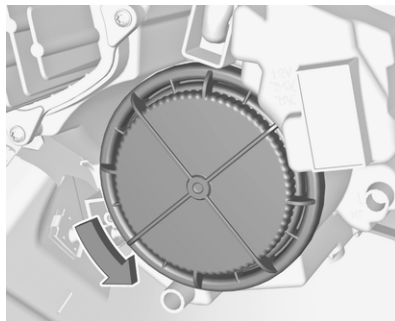
After a bulb replacement switch on the ignition, operate and check the lights.

## Halogen headlights

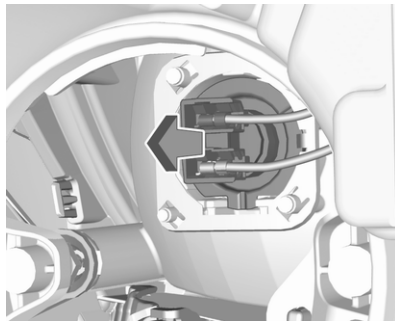


- 1 : high beam, turn light
- 2 : low beam

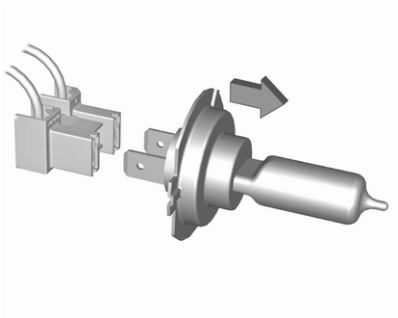
## High beam



1. Rotate the cap anticlockwise and remove it.

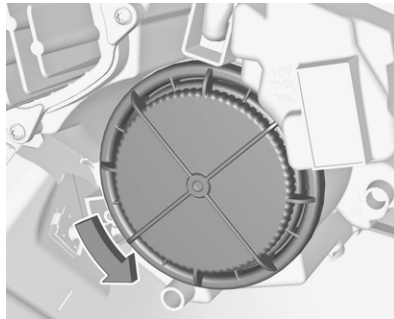


2. Withdraw the upper bulb socket from the reflector housing.

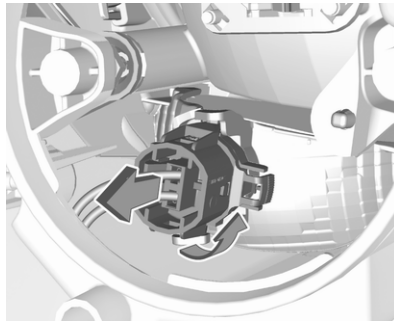


3. Remove the bulb from the plug connector by pulling.
4. Replace the bulb and connect it to the plug connector.
5. Insert and push the bulb socket into the reflector housing by setting the lug into position.
6. Fit the cap and rotate clockwise.

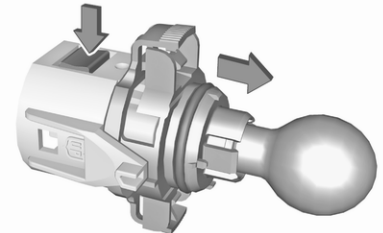
### Turn light



1. Rotate the cap anticlockwise and remove it.

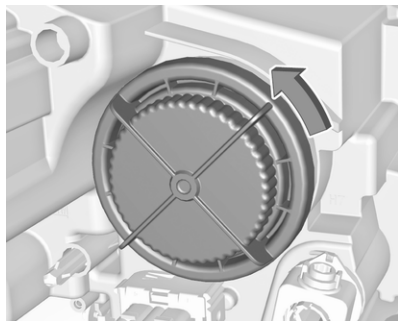


2. Rotate the lower bulb socket anticlockwise to disengage. Withdraw the bulb socket from the reflector housing.

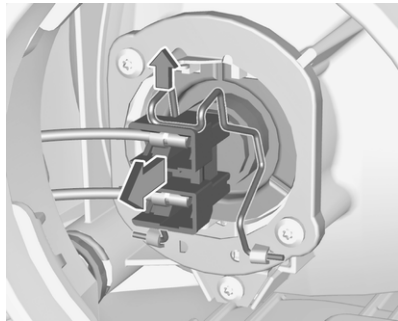


3. Press latch and remove the bulb from the bulb socket.
4. Replace the bulb and attach it to the bulb socket.
5. Insert the bulb socket into the reflector housing and rotate clockwise.
6. Fit the cap and rotate clockwise.

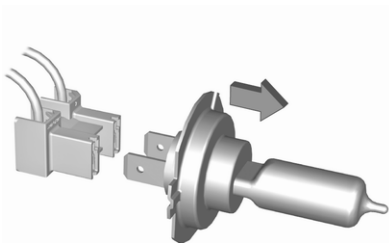
### Low beam



1. Rotate the cap anticlockwise and remove it.



2. Lift the retainer, then pull the plug connector backwards.
3. Fold down the retainer and remove the bulb from the reflector housing.



4. Replace the bulb and push it into the reflector housing by setting the lug into position.
5. Fold up the retainer and hold in position.
6. Attach the plug connector to the bulb and fix it with the retainer.
7. Fit the cap and rotate clockwise.

### Sidelight / daytime running light

In case of defective LEDs, have them replaced by a workshop.

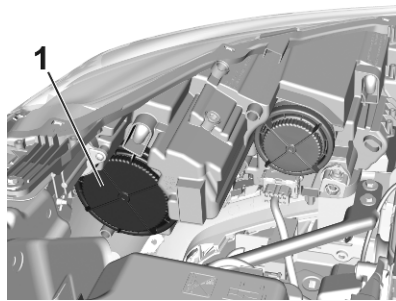
### LED headlights

Headlights for low and high beam, sidelights, daytime running lights and turn lights are designed as LEDs and cannot be changed.

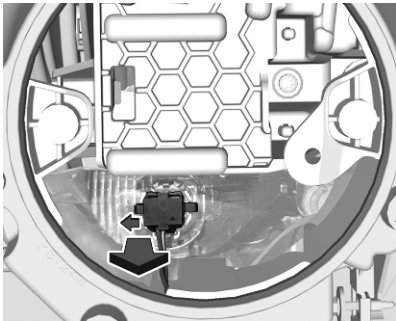
Have lights repaired by a workshop in case of failure.

### Eco-LED headlights

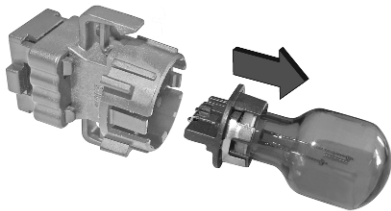
The turn lights are designed as bulbs.



1. Rotate the cap anticlockwise and remove it.



2. Push the bulb socket to the left and withdraw it from the reflector housing.



3. Remove the bulb from the plug connector by pulling.
4. Replace the bulb and connect it to the plug connector.
5. Insert the bulb socket into the reflector housing and push it forwards until it engages.
6. Fit the cap and rotate clockwise.

### Front fog lights

The front fog lights are designed as LEDs and cannot be changed. In case of failure, have LEDs replaced by a workshop.

### Tail lights

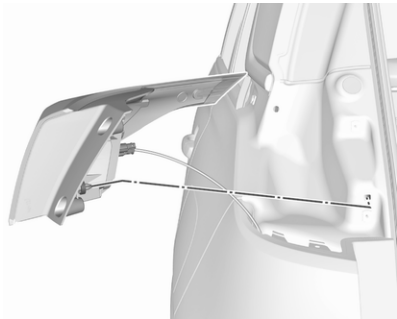
Depending on version, tail lights and brake lights are designed as LEDs. In case of failure, have LEDs replaced by a workshop.

### Light assembly in the body

#### Detaching the light assembly



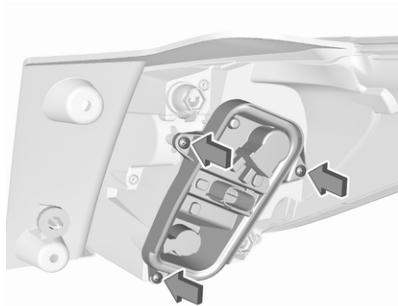
1. Unscrew the two screws that secure the light assembly.



2. Remove the light assembly by pulling it straight back.

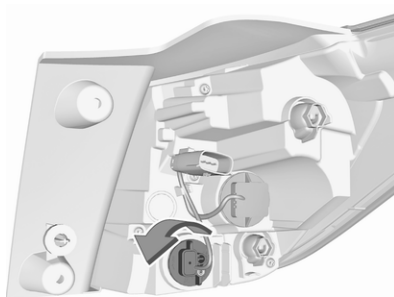
3. Remove the bulb socket.

a) Version without LED:



Remove the three screws and take out.

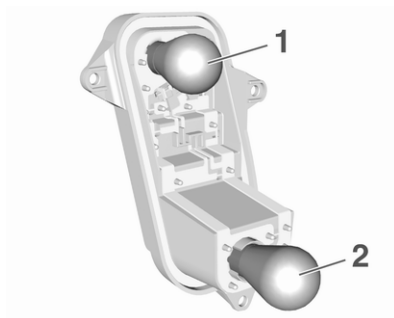
b) Version with LED:



Remove from the light assembly by turning it anticlockwise.

4. Remove the bulb.

a) Version without LED:

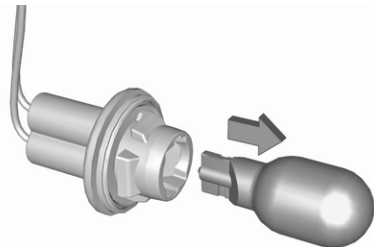


Pull and replace.

1 : tail light / brake light

2 : turn light

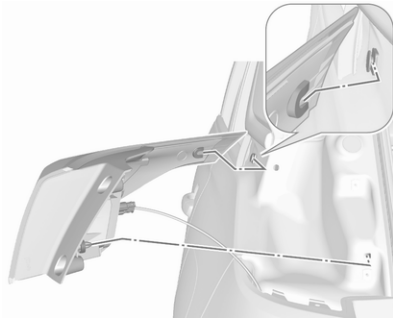
b) Version with LED:



Pull straight out to remove from the socket and replace.

#### Attaching the light assembly

1. Depending on version, attach the bulb carrier to the light assembly and secure with the three screws or attach turn light bulb socket.



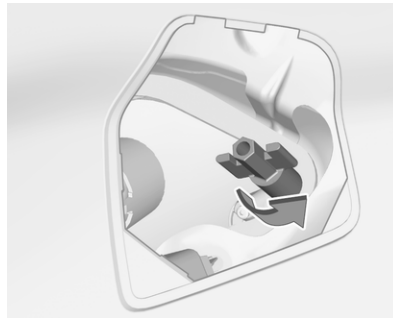
2. Attach the light assembly to the vehicle body and secure with the two screws.

### Light assembly in the tailgate

#### Detaching the light assembly



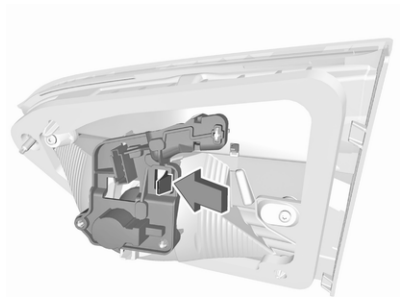
1. Release the cover in the tailgate and remove it.



2. Unscrew the plastic nut by hand.

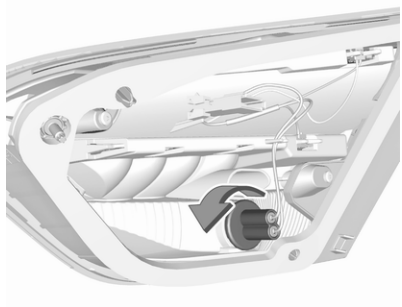


3. Carefully withdraw the light assembly from the recesses and remove.
4. Remove bulb socket.
  - a) Version without LED:



Press latch to release and remove bulb socket.

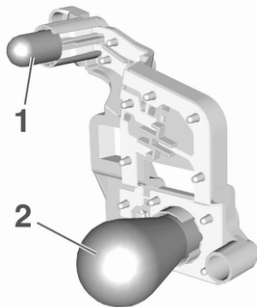
b) Version with LED:



Remove the reverse light bulb socket from the light assembly by turning it anticlockwise.

5. Remove bulb.

a) Version without LED:

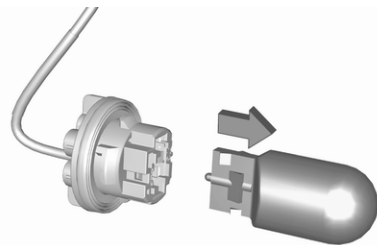


Remove and replace.

1 : tail light

2 : rear fog light or reverse light

b) Version with LED:



Pull straight out to remove and replace.

### Attaching the light assembly

1. Depending on version, attach the bulb carrier to the light assembly or attach the reverse light bulb socket.

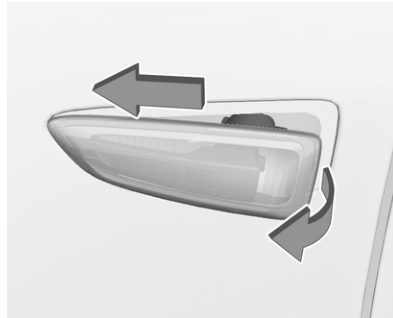




2. Attach the light assembly to the tailgate.
3. Secure the light assembly with the plastic nut.
4. Attach the cover to the tailgate.

## Side turn lights

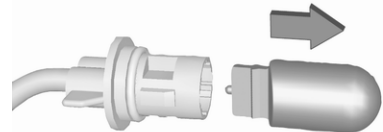
To replace bulb, remove light assembly:



1. Slide the light assembly forward and remove it at the back.



2. Turn bulb socket anticlockwise and remove from light assembly.



3. Detach the bulb from the bulb socket and replace the bulb.

4. Insert bulb socket and turn clockwise.
5. Insert left end of the light assembly, slide to the left and insert right end.

## Number plate light

The number plate light is designed as LEDs and cannot be changed. Have lights repaired by a workshop in case of failure.

## Interior lights

Have the following bulbs replaced by a workshop:

- courtesy light, reading lights
- load compartment light
- instrument panel illumination

## Electrical system

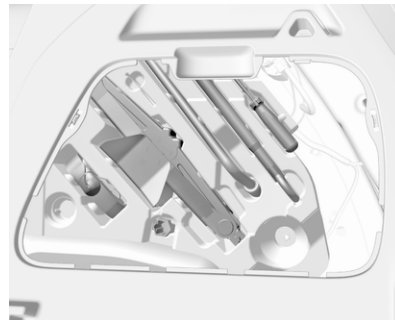
### Fuses

A defective fuse must be replaced by a workshop.

## Vehicle tools

### Tools

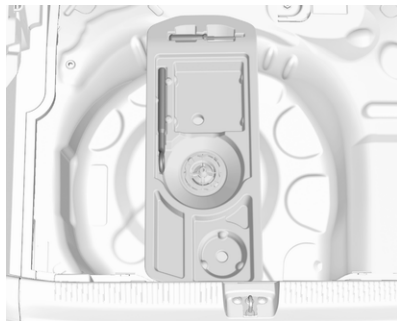
#### Vehicles with spare wheel



The jack, tools, a strap for securing a damaged wheel and the towing eye are placed in the tool box in the right wall of the load compartment.

Spare wheel ↪ 258.

## Vehicles without spare wheel



The screwdriver and the towing eye are located in a box below the floor cover in the load compartment.

Tyre repair kit ↗ 253.

## Wheels and tyres

### Tyre condition, wheel condition

Drive over edges slowly and at right angles if possible. Driving over sharp edges can cause tyre and wheel damage. Do not trap tyres on the kerb when parking.

Regularly check the wheels for damage. Seek the assistance of a workshop in the event of damage or unusual wear.

### Winter tyres

Winter tyres improve driving safety at temperatures below 7 °C and should therefore be fitted on all wheels.

In accordance with country-specific regulations, affix the speed sticker in the driver's field of view, if the tyre speed code is below the maximum speed of the vehicle.

All tyre sizes are permitted as winter tyres ↗ 283.

## Tyre designations

E.g. **195/65 R 15 91 T**

**195** : tyre width, mm

**65** : cross-section ratio (tyre height to tyre width), %

**R** : belt type: Radial

**RF** : type: RunFlat

**15** : wheel diameter, inches

**91** : load index e.g. 95 is equivalent to 615 kg

**T** : speed code letter

Speed code letter:

**Q** : up to 100 mph

**S** : up to 112 mph

**T** : up to 118 mph

**H** : up to 130 mph

**V** : up to 150 mph

**W** : up to 168 mph

Choose a tyre appropriate for the maximum speed of this vehicle. Refer to the EEC Certificate of Conformity provided with the vehicle or other national registration documents. Optional equipment could reduce the maximum speed of the vehicle.

## Directional tyres

Directional tyres should be mounted so that they rotate in the correct direction. The proper rotation direction is indicated by a symbol (e.g. an arrow) on the sidewall.

## Tyre pressure

Check the pressure of cold tyres at least every 14 days and before any long journey.

Do not forget the spare wheel.



The tyre pressure information label on the left door frame indicates the original equipment tyres and the correspondent tyre pressures.

The tyre pressure data refers to cold tyres. It applies to summer and winter tyres.

Always inflate the spare tyre to the pressure specified for full load.

The ECO tyre pressure serves to achieve the smallest amount of fuel consumption possible.

Incorrect tyre pressures will impair safety, vehicle handling, comfort and fuel economy and will increase tyre wear.

The tyre pressure table indicates the required pressure for a specific tyre size only and shows all possible tyre combinations ↗ 283.

For the tyres approved for this vehicle, refer to the EEC Certificate of Conformity provided with the vehicle or other national registration documents.

The driver is responsible for correct adjustment of tyre pressure.

### ⚠ Warning

If the pressure is too low, this can result in considerable tyre warm-up and internal damage, leading to tread separation and even to tyre blow-out at high speeds.

### ⚠ Warning

For specific tyres the recommended tyre pressure as shown in the tyre pressure table may exceed the maximum tyre pressure as indicated on the tyre. Never exceed the maximum tyre pressure as indicated on the tyre.


## Temperature dependency

The tyre pressure depends on the temperature of the tyre. During driving, tyre temperature and pressure increase. Tyre pressure values provided on the tyre information label and tyre pressure chart are valid for cold tyres, which means at 20 °C.

The pressure increases by nearly 1.5 psi for a 10 °C temperature increase. This must be considered when warm tyres are checked.

## Tyre deflation detection system

The tyre deflation detection system continually checks the rotation speed of all four wheels and warns on low tyre pressure condition once vehicle is driving. This is achieved by comparing tyre rolling circumference with reference values and further signals.

If a tyre loses pressure the control indicator  illuminates and a warning message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

Control indicator  ⇨ 74.

In this case reduce speed, avoid sharp cornering and strong braking. Stop at next safe opportunity and check tyre pressure.

After adjusting tyre pressure initialise system to extinguish the control indicator and restart system.

If the failure continues to be displayed, contact a workshop. The system is inoperable when ABS or ESC has a malfunction or a temporary spare wheel is used. Once the road tyre has been refitted, check the tyre pressure with cold tyres and initialise the system.

### Caution

Deflation detection system warns just about low tyre pressure condition and does not replace regular tyre maintenance by the driver.

## System initialisation

After tyre pressure correction or wheel change, the system must be initialised to learn new circumference reference values:

1. Always ensure that all four tyres have correct tyre pressure ⇨ 283.
2. Apply parking brake.

3. Initialise the system via the Info Display ⇨ 79.
4. Reset is confirmed by pop-up indication.

After initialisation system automatically calibrates to new tyre pressures during driving. After longer drive the system will adopt and monitor new pressures.

Always check tyre pressure with cold tyres.

System has to be reinitialised when:

- Tyre pressure has been changed
- Load condition has been changed
- Wheels have been swapped or exchanged

The system will not warn instantaneously on a tyre blow out or a rapid deflation. This is due to required calculation time.

## Tread depth

Check tread depth at regular intervals.

For safety reasons, it is recommended that the tread depth of the tyres on one axle should not vary by more than 2 mm.



The legally permissible minimum tread depth (1.6 mm) has been reached when the tread has worn down as far as one of the tread wear indicators (TWI). Their position is indicated by markings on the sidewall.

If there is more wear at the front than the rear, swap round front wheels and rear wheels periodically. If directional tyres are mounted, ensure that the direction of rotation of the wheels remains the same.

Tyres age, even if they are not used. We recommend tyre replacement every 6 years.

## Changing tyre and wheel size

If tyres of a different size than those fitted at the factory are used, it may be necessary to reprogramme systems and make other vehicle modifications. Have the label with tyre pressures replaced.

### **⚠ Warning**

The use of unsuitable tyres or wheels may lead to accidents and will invalidate the vehicle operating permit.

## Wheel covers

Wheel covers and tyres that are factory approved for the respective vehicle and comply with all of the relevant wheel and tyre combination requirements must be used.

If the wheel covers and tyres used are not factory approved, the tyres must not have a rim protection ridge.

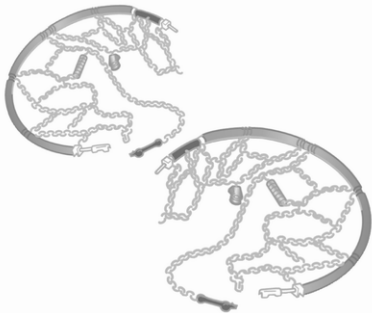
Wheel covers must not impair brake cooling.

### **⚠ Warning**

Use of unsuitable tyres or wheel covers could lead to sudden pressure loss and thereby accidents.

Vehicles with steel wheels: When using locking wheel nuts, do not attach wheel covers.

## Tyre chains



Tyre chains are only permitted on the front wheels.

Always use fine mesh chains that add no more than 10 mm to the tyre tread and the inboard sides (including chain lock).

### **⚠ Warning**

Damage may lead to tyre blowout.

Tyre chains are only permitted on tyres of size 195/65 R15 91 and 195/60 R16 89

## Temporary spare wheel

The use of tyre chains is not permitted on the temporary spare wheel.

## Tyre repair kit

Minor damage to the tyre tread can be repaired with the tyre repair kit.

Do not remove foreign bodies from the tyres.

Tyre damage exceeding 4 mm or that is at tyre's sidewall cannot be repaired with the tyre repair kit.

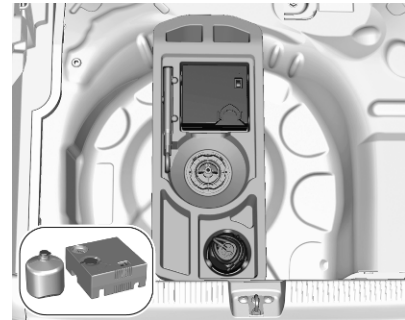
Depending on version, there are two different tyre repair kits (Type A and Type B).

### **⚠ Warning**

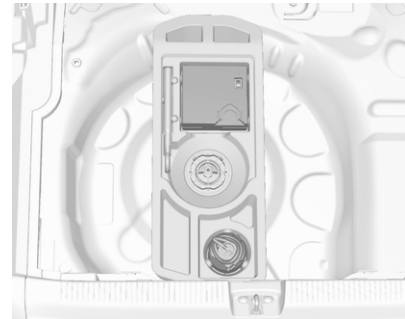
Do not drive faster than 50 mph.  
Do not use for a lengthy period.  
Steering and handling may be affected.

In the case of a flat tyre:

Apply the parking brake and engage first gear, reverse gear or **P**.



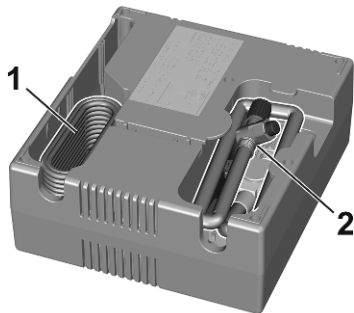
Type A



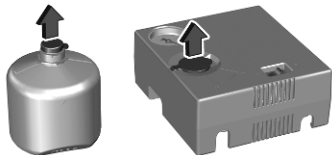
Type B

The tyre repair kit is in the load compartment below the floor cover.

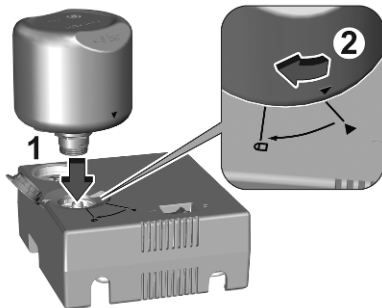
1. Remove the sealant bottle and the compressor.
2. Pull speed limit label from sealant bottle and place it in driver's visible area.



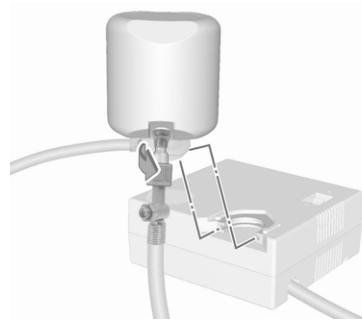
3. Remove the electrical connection cable (1) and air hose (2) from the stowage compartments on the underside of the compressor.



4. Type A: Open sealant bottle and lift the lid.



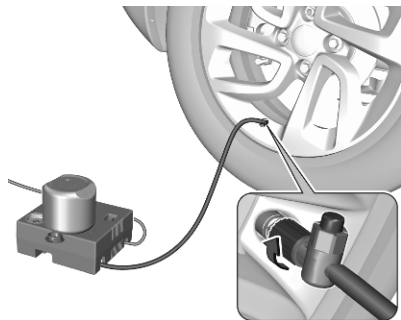
5. Type A: First, insert sealant bottle into the compressor and align the triangle symbols. Then, push down sealant bottle and turn it to the lock position.



Type B: Screw the compressor air hose to the connection on the sealant bottle.

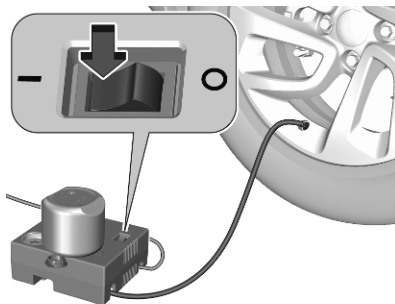
6. Type B: Fit the sealant bottle into the bracket on the compressor.
7. Set the compressor near the tyre in such a way that the sealant bottle is upright.
8. Unscrew valve cap from defective tyre.





9. Screw the filler hose to the tyre valve.
10. The switch on the compressor must be set to O.
11. Connect the compressor plug to the 12 V power outlet or cigarette lighter socket ↗ 62.

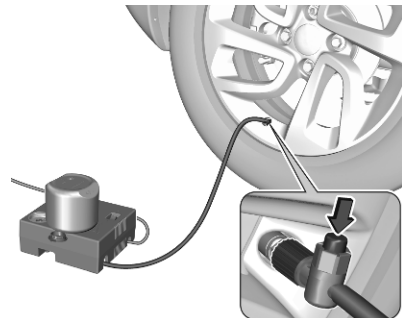
To avoid discharging the vehicle battery, we recommend running the engine.



12. Set the rocker switch on the compressor to I. The tyre is filled with sealant.
13. The compressor pressure gauge briefly indicates up to 600 kPa (6 bar) whilst the sealant bottle is emptying (approx. 30 seconds). Then the pressure starts to drop.
14. All of the sealant is pumped into the tyre. Then the tyre is being inflated.
15. The prescribed tyre pressure should be obtained within ten minutes.  
Tyre pressure ↗ 283.

When the correct pressure is obtained, switch off the compressor.

If the prescribed tyre pressure is not obtained within ten minutes, remove the tyre repair kit. Move the vehicle one tyre rotation. Reattach the tyre repair kit and continue the filling procedure for ten minutes. If the prescribed tyre pressure is still not obtained, the tyre is too badly damaged. Seek the assistance of a workshop.



Drain excess tyre pressure with the button on the air hose.

Do not run the compressor longer than ten minutes.

16. Detach the tyre repair kit. Remove sealant bottle from compressor. Screw the filler hose to the free connection of the sealant bottle. This prevents sealant from escaping. Stow tyre repair kit in load compartment.
17. Remove any excess sealant using a cloth.
18. Continue driving immediately so that sealant is evenly distributed in the tyre. Drive between 13 mph and 37 mph. After driving approx. 3 miles but no more than ten minutes, stop and check tyre pressure. Screw compressor air hose directly onto tyre valve when doing this. Fill tyre as described before. Drain excess tyre pressure with the button on the air hose.  
If tyre pressure hasn't decreased under 200 kPa (2 bar), set it to the correct value. Otherwise the vehicle must not be used. Seek assistance of a workshop.  
Repeat the checking procedure once more after driving further 6 miles but no more than ten

minutes to check that there is no more loss of pressure.

If the tyre pressure has fallen below 200 kPa (2 bar), the vehicle must not be used. Seek the assistance of a workshop.

19. Stow away tyre repair kit in load compartment.

#### Notice

The driving characteristics of the repaired tyre are severely affected, therefore have this tyre replaced.

If unusual noise is heard or the compressor becomes hot, turn compressor off for at least 30 min.

The built-in safety valve opens at a pressure of seven bar (102 psi).

Note the expiry date of the kit. After this date its sealing capability is no longer guaranteed. Pay attention to storage information on sealant bottle.

Replace the used sealant bottle. Dispose of the bottle as prescribed by applicable laws.

The compressor and sealant can be used from approx. -30 °C.

## Wheel changing

### ⚠ Warning

Ensure to use always the correct wheel bolts if changing the wheels. When installing the spare wheel for temporary usage, the bolts for alloy wheel rims can also be used.

Make the following preparations and observe the following information:

- Park the vehicle on a level, firm and non-skid surface. The front wheels must be in the straight-ahead position.
- If necessary, place a chock under the wheel diagonally opposite the wheel to be changed.
- Apply the parking brake and engage first gear, reverse gear or P.
- If the ground on which the vehicle is standing is soft, a solid board (max. 1 cm thick) should be placed under the jack.

- Take heavy objects out of the vehicle before jacking up.
- No people or animals may be in the vehicle when it is jacked-up.
- Never crawl under a jacked-up vehicle.
- Do not start the vehicle when it is raised on the jack.
- Before screwing in the wheel bolts, clean them.

**⚠ Warning**

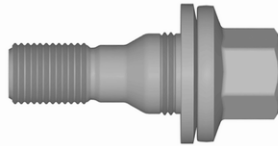
Do not grease wheel bolts.

**Tightening torques****Caution**

If the vehicle is equipped with alloy wheel rims, tighten the wheel bolts manually at least for the first five turns.

Depending on the wheel rim, different bolts with different tightening torques are available.

Use the correct wheel bolts for the respective wheels. The wheel rims shown are only examples.



- For alloy wheel rims:  
Tightening torque for alloy wheel rims is 100 Nm.



- For steel wheel rims:



Tightening torque for conventional steel wheel rims is 110 Nm.



Tightening torque for designed steel wheel rims is 130 Nm.

### Jacking positions

The jacking positions shown refer to the use of lifting arms and accessory jacks used for changing winter / summer tyres.



The rear arm position of the lifting platform is centrally under the relevant vehicle jacking point.



The front arm position of the lifting platform is centrally under the relevant vehicle jacking point.

### Spare wheel

The spare wheel can be classified as a temporary spare wheel depending on the size compared to the other mounted wheels and country regulations. In this case a permissible maximum speed applies, even though no label at the spare wheel indicates this.

If there is a label on the spare wheel, the permissible speed still depends on the country regulations.

Only mount one temporary spare wheel. Take curves slowly. Do not use for a long period of time.

#### Caution

The use of a spare wheel that is smaller than the other wheels or in combination with winter tyres could affect driveability. Have the defective tyre replaced as soon as possible.

#### Caution

If driving with a temporary spare wheel, active emergency braking has to be deactivated.



The spare wheel is located in the load compartment beneath the floor covering.

To remove:

1. Open the floor cover.
2. The spare wheel is secured with a wing nut. Unscrew nut and take out the spare wheel.

There is a box with tools in the right wall of the load compartment.

Vehicle tools ⇨ 248.

3. If, after a wheel change, no wheel is placed in the spare wheel well, fasten the wing nut and close the floor cover.
4. After a wheel change back to a full size wheel, place the spare wheel outside up in the well and secure with the wing nut.

### Fitting the spare wheel

Make the following preparations and observe the following information:

- Park the vehicle on a level, firm and non-skid surface. The front wheels must be in the straight-ahead position.
- If necessary, place a chock under the wheel diagonally opposite the wheel to be changed.
- Apply the parking brake and engage first gear, reverse gear or **P**.
- Remove the spare wheel.
- Never change more than one wheel at once.

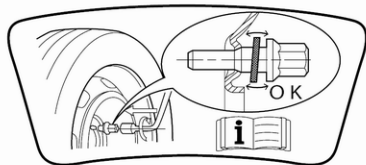
- Use the jack only to change wheels in case of puncture, not for seasonal winter or summer tyre change.
- The jack is maintenance-free.
- If the ground on which the vehicle is standing is soft, a solid board (max. 1 cm thick) should be placed under the jack.
- Take heavy objects out of the vehicle before jacking up.
- No people or animals may be in the vehicle when it is jacked-up.
- Never crawl under a jacked-up vehicle.
- Do not start the vehicle when it is raised on the jack.
- Before screwing in the wheel bolts, clean them.

#### **⚠ Warning**

Do not grease wheel bolts.

**⚠ Warning**

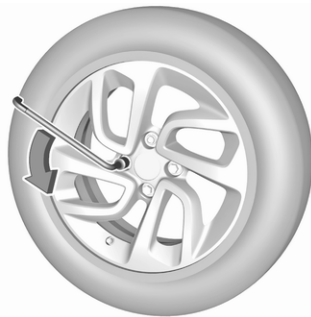
Ensure to use always the correct wheel bolts if changing the wheels. When installing the spare wheel for temporary usage, the bolts for alloy wheel rims can also be used.



- Note that the spare wheel is secured by the conical contact of each bolt if the wheel bolts for the alloy wheel rims are used. In this case, the washers do not come into contact with the spare wheel.
1. Disengage wheel bolt caps with a screwdriver and remove.

Steel wheel rims: Pull off the wheel cover.

Alloy wheel rims: Disengage wheel bolt caps with a screwdriver and remove. To protect the wheel, place a soft cloth between the screwdriver and the alloy wheel.



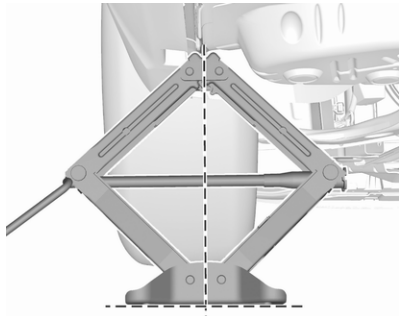
2. Attach the wheel wrench and loosen each wheel bolt by half a turn.

The wheels might be protected by locking wheel bolts. To loosen these specific bolts, first attach the adapter for the locking wheel bolts onto the head of the bolt before installing the wheel wrench. The adapter is located in

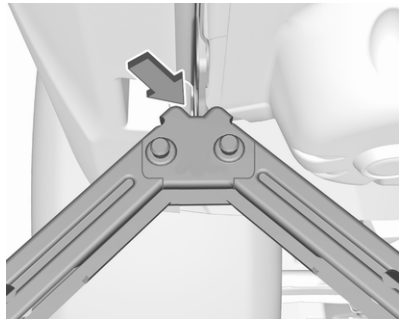
the glovebox or in the load compartment under the rear floor cover.



3. Ensure the jack is correctly positioned under the relevant vehicle jacking point.



4. Set the jack to the necessary height. Position it directly below the jacking point in a manner that prevents it from slipping.

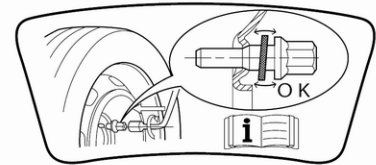


Ensure that the edge of the body fits into the notch of the jack.



With the jack correctly aligned jack up until wheel is clear of the ground.

5. Unscrew the wheel nuts.
6. Change the wheel.
7. Screw on the wheel nuts.
8. Lower the vehicle and remove jack.
9. Install the wheel wrench ensuring that it is located securely and tighten each bolt in a crosswise sequence. Tightening torque is 100 Nm.



If the vehicle is equipped with alloy wheel rims, note that the wheel bolts can also be used for the spare wheel. In this case, the spare wheel is secured by the conical contact of each bolt.

10. Align the valve hole in the wheel cover with the tyre valve before installing.
  - Install wheel nut caps.
11. Stow and secure the replaced wheel and the tools.
12. Check the tyre pressure of the installed tyre and the tightening torque as soon as possible.

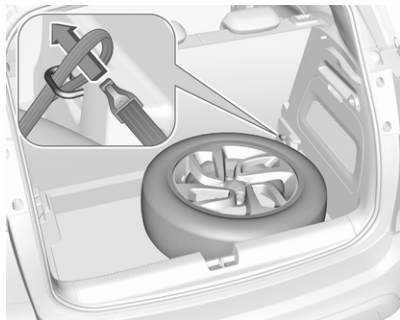
### Stowing a damaged full size wheel in the load compartment

The spare wheel well is not designed for other tyre sizes than the temporary spare wheel. A damaged full size wheel must be stowed in the load compartment and secured with a strap.

Vehicle tools ⇨ 248.

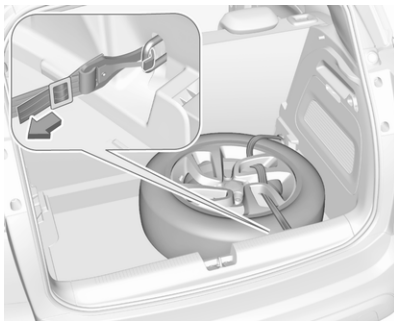
To secure the wheel:

1. Position the wheel outside up close to one sidewall of the load compartment.



2. Place the loop end of the strap through the front lashing eye on the appropriate side.

3. Place the hook end of the strap through the loop and pull it until the strap is fastened securely to the lashing eye.



4. Insert the strap through the spokes of the wheel as shown in the illustration.
5. Mount the hook to the rear lashing eye.
6. Tighten the strap and secure it using the buckle.

If no strap is available, make sure to store the wheel securely in the load compartment.

Loading information ⇨ 54

### **⚠ Danger**

Always drive with folded up and engaged rear seat backrests when stowing a damaged full size wheel in the load compartment.



## Jump starting

Do not start with quick charger.

A vehicle with a discharged vehicle battery can be started using jump leads and the vehicle battery of another vehicle.

### ⚠ Warning

Be extremely careful when starting with jump leads. Any deviation from the following instructions can lead to injuries or damage caused by battery explosion or damage to the electrical systems of both vehicles.

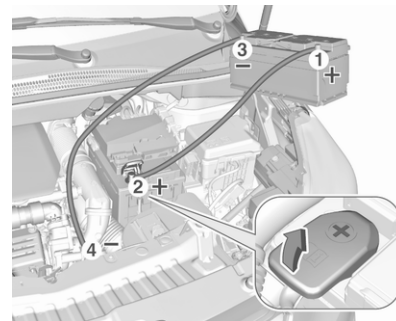
### ⚠ Warning

Avoid contact of the battery with eyes, skin, fabrics and painted surfaces. The fluid contains sulphuric acid which can cause injuries and damage in the event of direct contact.

- Never expose the vehicle battery to naked flames or sparks.

- A discharged vehicle battery can already freeze at a temperature of 0 °C. Defrost the frozen battery before connecting jump leads.
- Wear eye protection and protective clothing when handling a battery.
- Use a booster battery with the same voltage (12 V). Its capacity (Ah) must not be much less than that of the discharged vehicle battery.
- Use jump leads with insulated terminals and a cross section of at least 16 mm<sup>2</sup> (25 mm<sup>2</sup> for diesel engines).
- Do not disconnect the discharged vehicle battery from the vehicle.
- Switch off all unnecessary electrical consumers.
- Do not lean over the vehicle battery during jump starting.
- Do not allow the terminals of one lead to touch those of the other lead.

- The vehicles must not come into contact with each other during the jump starting process.
- Apply the parking brake, transmission in neutral, automatic transmission in P.



Open the positive terminal protection caps of both vehicle batteries.

Lead connection order:

1. Connect the red lead to the positive terminal of the booster battery.
2. Connect the other end of the red lead to the positive terminal of the discharged battery.

3. Connect the black lead to the negative terminal of the booster battery.
4. Connect the other end of the black lead to a vehicle grounding point of your vehicle in the engine compartment.

Route the leads so that they cannot catch on rotating parts in the engine compartment.

To start the engine:

1. Start the engine of the vehicle providing the jump.
2. After five minutes, start the other engine. Start attempts should be made for no longer than 15 seconds at an interval of one minute.
3. Allow both engines to idle for approx. three minutes with the leads connected.
4. Switch on electrical consumers (e.g. headlights, heated rear window) of the vehicle receiving the jump start.
5. Reverse above sequence exactly when removing leads.

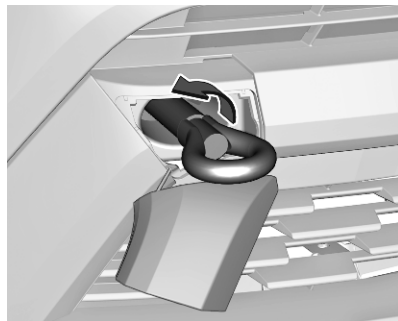
## Towing

### Towing the vehicle



Wrap a cloth around the tip of a flat screwdriver to prevent paint damage. Insert a screwdriver in the slot at the bottom of the cap. Release the cap by carefully moving the screwdriver downwards.

The towing eye is stowed with the vehicle tools ↗ 248.



Screw in the towing eye as far as it will go until it stops in a horizontal position.

Attach a tow rope – or better still a tow rod – to the towing eye.

The towing eye must only be used for towing and not for recovering the vehicle.

Switch on ignition to release steering wheel lock and to permit operation of brake lights, horn and windscreen wiper.

**Caution**

Deactivate the driver assistance systems like active emergency braking ↗ 199, otherwise the vehicle may automatically brake during towing.

Switch the selector lever to neutral.  
Release the parking brake.

**Caution**

Drive slowly. Do not drive jerkily. Excessive tractive force can damage the vehicle.

When the engine is not running, considerably more force is needed to brake and steer.

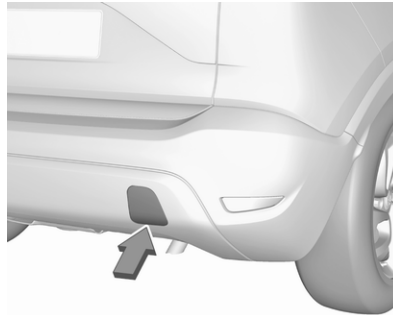
To prevent the entry of exhaust gases from the towing vehicle, switch on the air recirculation and close the windows.

Vehicles with automatic transmission: The vehicle must be towed facing forwards, not faster than 50 mph nor further than 60 miles. In all other

cases and when the transmission is defective, the front axle must be raised off the ground.

Seek the assistance of a workshop. After towing, unscrew the towing eye. Insert cap with the outer flange into the recess and fix cap by pushing.

**Towing another vehicle**



Wrap a cloth around the tip of a flat screwdriver to prevent paint damage. Insert a screwdriver in the slot at the bottom of the cap. Release the cap by carefully moving the screwdriver downwards.

The towing eye is stowed with the vehicle tools ↗ 248.



Screw in the towing eye as far as it will go until it stops in a horizontal position.

The lashing eye at the rear underneath the vehicle must never be used as a towing eye.

Attach a tow rope – or better still a tow rod – to the towing eye.

The towing eye must only be used for towing and not for recovering a vehicle.

**Caution**

Drive slowly. Do not drive jerkily. Excessive tractive force can damage the vehicle.

After towing, unscrew the towing eye. Insert cap with the upper flange into the recess and fix cap by pushing.

**Appearance care****Exterior care****Locks**

The locks are lubricated at the factory using a high quality lock cylinder grease. Use a de-icing agent only when absolutely necessary, as this has a degreasing effect and impairs lock function. After using a de-icing agent, have the locks regreased by a workshop.

**Washing**

The paintwork is exposed to environmental influences.

Bird droppings, dead insects, resin, pollen and the like should be cleaned off immediately, as they contain aggressive constituents which can cause paint damage.

If using a vehicle wash, comply with the vehicle wash manufacturer's instructions. The windscreen wiper and rear window wiper must be

switched off. Remove antenna and external accessories such as roof racks etc.

If the vehicle is washed by hand, make sure that the insides of the wheel housings are also thoroughly rinsed out.

Wax painted parts of the vehicle regularly.

Clean edges and folds on opened doors and the bonnet as well as the areas they cover.

Clean bright metal mouldings with a cleaning solution approved for aluminium to avoid damages.

**Caution**

Always use a cleaning agent with a pH value of four to nine. Do not use cleaning agents on hot surfaces.

Do not clean the engine compartment with a steam-jet or high-pressure jet cleaner.

Thoroughly rinse and leather-off the vehicle. Rinse leather frequently. Use separate leathers for painted and glass surfaces: remnants of wax on the windows will impair vision.

Have the door hinges of all doors greased by a workshop.

Do not use hard objects to remove spots of tar. Use tar removal spray on painted surfaces.

### **Exterior lights**

Headlight and other light covers are made of plastic. Do not use any abrasive or caustic agents, do not use an ice scraper, and do not clean them dry.

### **Polishing and waxing**

Polishing is necessary only if the paint has become dull or if solid deposits have become attached to it.

Plastic body parts must not be treated with wax or polishing agents.

### **Windows and windscreen wiper blades**

Switch off wipers before handling in their areas.

Use a soft lint-free cloth or chamois leather together with window cleaner and insect remover.

When cleaning the rear window from inside, always wipe in parallel to the heating element to prevent damage.

For mechanical removal of ice, use a sharp-edged ice scraper. Press the scraper firmly against the glass so that no dirt can get under it and scratch the glass.

Clean smearing wiper blades with a soft cloth and window cleaner. Also make sure to remove any residues such as wax, insect residues and similar from the window.

Ice residues, pollution and continuous wiping on dry windows will damage or even destroy the wiper blades.

### **Glass panel**

Use a soft lint-free cloth or chamois leather together with window cleaner to clean the glass panel.

### **Wheels and tyres**

Do not use high-pressure jet cleaners.

Clean rims with a pH-neutral wheel cleaner.

Rims are painted and can be treated with the same agents as the body.

### **Paintwork damage**

Rectify minor paintwork damage with a touch-up pen before rust forms. Have more extensive damage or rust areas repaired by a workshop.

### **Underbody**

Some areas of the vehicle underbody have a PVC undercoating while other critical areas have a durable protective wax coating.

After the underbody is washed, check the underbody and have it waxed if necessary.

Bitumen / rubber materials could damage the PVC coating. Have underbody work carried out by a workshop.

Before and after winter, wash the underbody and have the protective wax coating checked.

### Towing equipment

Do not clean the coupling ball bar with a steam-jet or high-pressure jet cleaner.

## Interior care

### Interior and upholstery

Only clean the vehicle interior, including the instrument panel fascia and panelling, with a dry cloth or interior cleaner.

Clean the leather upholstery with clear water and a soft cloth. In case of heavy soiling, use leather care.

The instrument cluster and the displays should only be cleaned using a soft damp cloth. If necessary use a weak soap solution.

Clean fabric upholstery with a vacuum cleaner and brush. Remove stains with an upholstery cleaner.

Clothing fabrics may not be colourfast. This could cause visible discolourations, especially on light-coloured upholstery. Removable stains and discolourations should be cleaned as soon as possible.

Clean seat belts with lukewarm water or interior cleaner.

#### Caution

Close Velcro fasteners as open Velcro fasteners on clothing could damage seat upholstery.

The same applies to clothing with sharp-edged objects, like zips or belts or studded jeans.

## Plastic and rubber parts

Plastic and rubber parts can be cleaned with the same cleaner as used to clean the body. Use interior cleaner if necessary. Do not use any other agent. Avoid solvents and petrol in particular. Do not use high-pressure jet cleaners.

## Floor mats

#### ⚠ Warning

If a floor mat has the wrong size or is not properly installed, it can interfere with pedals, what can cause unintended acceleration or increased stopping distance which can cause a crash and injury.

Use the following guidelines for proper floor mat usage.

- The original equipment floor mats were designed for this vehicle. If the floor mats need to be replaced, it is recommended to buy certified floor mats which fit properly and are fixed by the

retainers on the driver side.  
Always check that the floor mats do not interfere with the pedals.

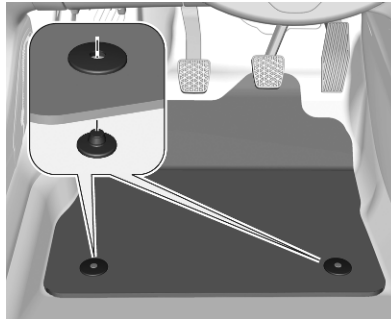
- Use the floor mat with the correct side up. Do not turn it over.
- Do not place anything on top of the driver's side floor mat.
- Use only a single floor mat on the driver's side.

### Installing and removing the floor mats

The driver's side floor mat and the passenger's side floor mat are each held in place by two retainers.

To install the floor mat:

1. Move the seat backwards as far as possible.



2. Align slots in the mat with the retainers, as shown.
3. Push the mat to the floor.

To remove the floor mat:

1. Move the seat backwards as far as possible.
2. Pull the floor mat upwards to remove.

## Service and maintenance

<b>General information</b> .....	<b>270</b>
Service information .....	270
<b>Recommended fluids, lubricants and parts</b> .....	<b>273</b>
Recommended fluids and lubricants .....	273

## General information

### Service information

In order to ensure economical and safe vehicle operation and to maintain the value of your vehicle, it is of vital importance that all maintenance work is carried out at the proper intervals as specified.

The detailed, up-to-date service schedule for your vehicle is available at the workshop.

Severe operating conditions exist if one or more of the following circumstances occur frequently: Cold starting, stop and go operation, e.g. for taxis and police vehicles, trailer operation, mountain driving, driving on poor and sandy road surfaces, increased air pollution, presence of airborne sand and high dust content, driving at high altitude and large variations of temperature.

Under these severe operating conditions, certain service work may be required more frequently than the regular service interval indicated in

the service display. Contact a workshop for customised service schedules.

Service display ⇨ 67.



**Service intervals**

Engine code	EB2ADT EB2ADTS	EB2FA	EP6FADTXD (Hybrid version)	EP6FDTMD EP6FDTM
Country group 1	12,000 miles / 1 year	12,000 miles / 1 year	19,000 miles / 1 year <sup>1)</sup>	

1) Unless otherwise indicated in the service display.

Engine code	DV5RC DV5RD DV5RCD DV5RCE	DW10FC	DV6D
Country group 1	19,000 miles / 1 year <sup>1)</sup>	19,000 miles / 1 year <sup>1)</sup>	

1) Unless otherwise indicated in the service display.

**Country Group 1:**

Andorra, Austria, Belgium, Cyprus, Denmark, Finland, France, Germany, Greece, Iceland, Italy, Liechtenstein, Luxembourg, Malta, Monaco, Netherlands, Norway, Portugal, Republic of Ireland, San Marino, Spain, Sweden, Switzerland, United Kingdom.

**Country Group 2:**

Bosnia-Herzegovina, Bulgaria, Croatia, Czech Republic, Estonia, Hungary, Latvia, Lithuania, North Macedonia, Poland, Romania, Slovakia, Slovenia.

**Country Group 3:**

Albania, Kosovo, Montenegro, New Zealand, Serbia.

**Country Group 4:**

Israel, Lesotho, South Africa, Swaziland, Turkey.

**Country Group 5:**

Russia.

**Country Group 6:**

All other countries which are not listed in the previous country groups.

**Confirmations**

Confirmation of service is recorded in the Service and warranty booklet. The date and mileage is completed with the stamp and signature of the servicing workshop.

Make sure that the Service and warranty booklet is completed correctly as continuous proof of service is essential if any warranty or goodwill claims are to be met, and is also a benefit when selling the vehicle.

## Recommended fluids, lubricants and parts

### Recommended fluids and lubricants

Only use products that meet the recommended specifications.

#### Warning

Operating materials are hazardous and could be poisonous. Handle with care. Pay attention to information given on the containers.

### Engine oil

Engine oil is identified by its quality and its viscosity. Quality is more important than viscosity when selecting which engine oil to use. The engine oil quality ensures e.g. engine cleanliness, wear protection and engine oil aging control, whereas viscosity grade gives information on the engine oil's thickness over a temperature range.

Select the appropriate engine oil based on its quality and on the minimum ambient temperature ⇨ 277.

### Topping up engine oil

#### Caution

In case of any spilled engine oil, wipe it up and dispose of it properly.

Engine oils of different manufacturers and brands can be mixed as long as they comply with the required engine oil quality and viscosity.

Select the appropriate engine oil based on its quality and on the minimum ambient temperature ⇨ 277.

### Additional engine oil additives

The use of additional engine oil additives could cause damage and invalidate the warranty.

### Engine oil viscosity grades

The SAE viscosity grade gives information of the thickness of the engine oil.

Multigrade engine oil is indicated by two figures, e.g. SAE 5W-30. The first figure, followed by a W, indicates the low temperature viscosity and the second figure the high temperature viscosity.

Select the appropriate viscosity grade depending on the minimum ambient temperature ⇨ 277.

All of the recommended viscosity grades are suitable for high ambient temperatures.

### Coolant and antifreeze

Use only antifreeze approved for the vehicle. Consult a workshop.

The system is factory filled with coolant designed for excellent corrosion protection and frost protection down to approx. -37 °C. This concentration should be maintained all year round. The use of additional coolant additives that

intend to give additional corrosion protection or seal against minor leaks can cause function problems. Liability for consequences resulting from the use of additional coolant additives will be rejected.

### **Washer fluid**

Use only washer fluid approved for the vehicle to prevent damage of wiper blades, paintwork, plastic and rubber parts. Consult a workshop.

### **Brake and clutch fluid**

Over time, brake fluid absorbs moisture which will reduce braking effectiveness. The brake fluid should therefore be replaced at the specified interval.

Use only brake fluid approved for the vehicle. Consult a workshop.

### **AdBlue**

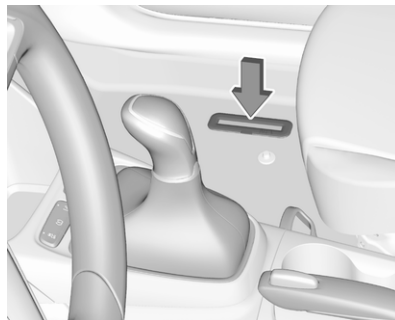
Only use AdBlue to reduce the nitrogen oxides in the exhaust emission ↪ 180.

## Technical data

<b>Vehicle identification</b> .....	<b>275</b>
Vehicle identification number ..	275
Identification plate .....	275
Engine identification .....	276
<b>Vehicle data</b> .....	<b>277</b>
Recommended fluids and lubricants .....	277
Engine data .....	278
Performance .....	279
Vehicle dimensions .....	281
Capacities .....	282
Tyre pressures .....	283

## Vehicle identification

### Vehicle identification number



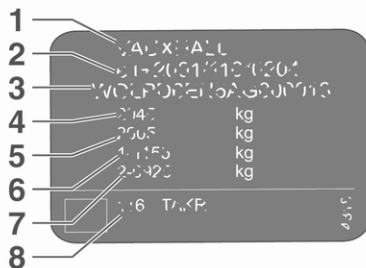
The vehicle identification number is stamped on the identification plate and on the floor pan, under the floor covering, visible under a cover.

The vehicle identification number may be embossed on the instrument panel, visible through the windscreen, or in the engine compartment on the right body panel.

## Identification plate



The identification plate is located on the front left or right door frame. The layout and position differ for some export countries.



Information on identification label:

- 1 : manufacturer
- 2 : type approval number
- 3 : vehicle identification number
- 4 : permissible gross vehicle weight rating in kg
- 5 : permissible gross train weight in kg
- 6 : maximum permissible front axle load in kg
- 7 : maximum permissible rear axle load in kg
- 8 : vehicle-specific or country-specific data

The combined total of front and rear axle loads must not exceed the permissible gross vehicle weight.

Vehicle's kerb weight depends on the specification of the vehicle, e.g. optional equipment and accessories. Refer to the EEC Certificate of Conformity provided with your vehicle or other national registration documents.

The technical data is determined in accordance with European Community standards. We reserve the right to make modifications. Specifications in the vehicle documents always have priority over those given in this manual.

## Engine identification

The technical data tables use the engine identifier code. The engine data table additionally shows the engineering code.

Engine data ⇨ 278.

To identify the respective engine, refer to the EEC Certificate of Conformity provided with this vehicle or other national registration documents.

The Certificate of Conformity shows the engine identifier code, other national publications may show the engineering code. Check piston displacement and engine power to identify the respective engine.

## Vehicle data

### Recommended fluids and lubricants

#### Required engine oil quality

Country groups ⇨ 270

Countries included in country groups 1 to 3 and 5

	EB2FA	
	EB2ADT	
	EB2ADTS	
	DV5RC	
	DV5RCD	EB2DT
	DV5RCE	EB2DTM
<b>Vauxhall Original engine oil</b>	<b>B71 2010 / B71 2312</b>	<b>B71 2312</b>

#### Engine oil viscosity grades

	<b>B71 2010</b>	<b>B71 2312</b>	<b>B71 2302</b>	<b>B71 2297</b>
Engine oil viscosity grade	SAE 0W-20	SAE 0W-30	SAE 0W-30	SAE 5W-30

## Engine data

Sales designation	1.2	1.2 Turbo	1.2 Turbo	1.2 Turbo
Engineering code	EB2FA	EB2DT / EB2ADT	EB2DTM	EB2ADTS
Piston displacement [cm <sup>3</sup> ]	1199	1199	1199	1199
Engine power [kW]	61	81	81	96
at rpm	5750	5500	5500	5500
Torque [Nm]	118	205	205	230
at rpm	2750	1750	1500	1750
Fuel type	Petrol	Petrol	Petrol	Petrol
Octane rating RON <sup>1)2)</sup>				
recommended	95	95	95	95
possible	98	98	98	98
possible	–	–	–	–

1) A country-specific label at the fuel filler flap can supersede the engine-specific requirement.

2) In certain countries, the use of a particular fuel, e.g. a specific octane rating, may be required to ensure proper engine operation.



<b>Sales designation</b>	<b>1.5</b>	<b>1.5</b>
<b>Engineering code</b>	<b>DV5RCD</b>	<b>DV5RCE</b>
Piston displacement [cm <sup>3</sup> ]	1499	1499
Engine power [kW]	88	81
at rpm	3750	3750
Torque [Nm]	300	250
at rpm	1750	1750
Fuel type	Diesel	Diesel

## Performance

Engine	EB2FA	EB2DT / EB2ADT	EB2ADTS	EB2DTM
Maximum speed [mph]				
Manual transmission	106	116	125	–
Automatic transmission	–	116	–	114

## 280 Technical data

---

Engine	DV5RCD	DV5RCE
Maximum speed [mph]		
Manual transmission	–	111
Automatic transmission	117	

---

## Vehicle dimensions

Length [mm]	4212
Width with two exterior mirrors [mm]	1976
Width with two exterior mirrors folded [mm]	1825
Height [mm]	1597
Length of load compartment floor [mm]	793
Length of load compartment with folded rear seats [mm]	1483
Load compartment width [mm]	947
Load compartment height with cover [mm]	584
Load compartment height without cover [mm]	894
Height of load compartment opening [mm]	712
Turning circle diameter [m]	11.2

**Capacities****Engine oil**

<b>Engine</b>	<b>EB2FA</b>	<b>EB2DT / EB2ADT EB2ADTS</b>	<b>EB2DTM</b>	<b>DV5RCD DV5RCE</b>
including filter [l]	3.25	3.5	..3)	3.95
between MIN and MAX [l]	1.0	1.0	..3)	1.6

---

3) Not available at time of printing

**Fuel tank**

Petrol / diesel, refilling quantity [l]	45
-----------------------------------------	----

---

**AdBlue tank**

AdBlue, refilling quantity [l]	14.8
--------------------------------	------

---

## Tyre pressures

Tyres	Comfort with up to 3 people		ECO with up to 3 people		With full load	
	front	rear	front	rear	front	rear
	[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])
195/65 R15, 195/60 R16	230/2.3 (33)	230/2.3 (33)	250/2.5 (36)	250/2.5 (36)	240/2.4 (35)	290/2.9 (42)
205/60 R16, 215/50 R17	230/2.3 (33)	230/2.3 (33)	250/2.5 (36)	250/2.5 (36)	240/2.4 (35)	270/2.7 (39)
Temporary spare wheel 125/80 R16	420/4.2 (60)	420/4.2 (60)	–	–	420/4.2 (60)	420/4.2 (60)

## Customer information

<b>Customer information</b> .....	<b>284</b>
Declaration of conformity .....	284
REACH .....	285
Software update .....	285
Registered trademarks .....	287
<b>Vehicle data recording and privacy</b> .....	<b>287</b>
Emergency call data recording and privacy .....	287
Event data recorders .....	288
Radio Frequency Identification (RFID) .....	291

## Customer information

### Declaration of conformity

#### Transmission systems

This vehicle has systems that transmit and / or receive radio waves subject to Directive 2014/53/EU and The Radio Equipment Regulations 2017 by the United Kingdom. The manufacturers of the systems listed below declare conformity with Directive 2014/53/EU and The Radio Equipment Regulations 2017. The full text of the EU declaration of conformity for each system is available at the following internet address: [www.opel.com/conformity](http://www.opel.com/conformity).

Importer is Vauxhall Motors Limited, MP UK 1-101-135, Chalton House, Luton Road, Chalton, Luton, Bedfordshire, LU4 9TT, United Kingdom.

#### Multimedia Navi Pro

Continental

LCIE Bureau Veritas-Site de Fontenay aux Roses, 33 avenue du général Leclerc, 92260 Fontenay aux Roses, France

Operation frequency (MHz)	Maximum output (dBm)
2400.0 - 2483.5	2.2
2400.0 - 2483.5	15

#### Multimedia

LG Electronics

European Shared Service center B.V. Krijgsman 1, 1186 DM Amstelveen, The Netherlands

Operation frequency:  
2400.0 - 2483.5 MHz

Maximum output: 4 dBm

#### BTA Module

Magneti Marelli S.p.A.

Viale A. Borletti 61/63, 20011 Corbetta, Italy

Operation frequency (MHz)	Maximum output (dBm)
880 - 915	33
1710 - 1785	24
1850 - 1910	24
1920 - 1980	24
2500 - 2570	23

#### Antenna module

Laird

Daimlerring 31, 31135 Hildesheim, Germany

Operation frequency: N/A

Maximum output: N/A

#### Radio remote control transmitter

Hülsbeck & Fürst GmbH & Co. KG  
Steeger Str. 17, 42551 Velbert, Germany

Operation frequency: 433.92 MHz

Maximum output: 10 dBm

#### Radio remote control receiver

Delphi European, Middle Eastern & African Regional Offices Customer Technology

Center Avenue de Luxembourg,  
L-4940 Bascharage, G.D. of Luxembourg

Operation frequency:  
119.0 - 128.6 kHz

Maximum output: 16dB $\mu$ A/m @ 10m

#### Electronic key transmitter

Valeo

43 Rue Bayen, 75017 Paris, France

Operation frequency: 433.92 MHz

Maximum output: 10 dBm

#### Immobiliser

KOSTAL of America, Inc.

350 Stephenson Hwy, Troy MI 48083, USA

Operation frequency: 125 kHz

Maximum output: 5 dB $\mu$ A/m at 10m

#### ICASA type approval numbers

List of all Independent Communications Authority of South Africa (ICASA) type approval numbers:

TA-2016/121, TA-2016/3261, TA-2017/2387, TA-2017/2745, TA-2013/430, TA-2017/1106, TA-2016/929, TA-2017/3180

#### REACH

Registration, Evaluation, Authorisation and Restriction of Chemicals (REACH) is a European Union regulation adopted to improve the protection of human health and the environment from the risks that can be posed by chemicals. Visit [www.opel.com/reach](http://www.opel.com/reach) for further information and for access to the Article 33 communication.

#### Software update

The Infotainment system can download and install selected software updates over a wireless connection.

**Notice**

The availability of these over-the-air vehicle software updates varies by vehicle and country. Find more information on our home page.

**Remote device management and remote software and firmware updates**

As an integral part of the service related to the performance of subscribed connected service contracts, necessary device management and necessary software and firmware updates related to the software and firmware for the named connected service will be performed remotely, in particular by using over-the-air technology.

For this, a secure radio network connection between the vehicle and the device management server will be established when ignition is switched on and a mobile network is available. Depending on the equipment of the vehicle, connection configuration must be set to **Connected vehicle** to allow the establishment of the radio network connection.

Irrespective of a valid connected service subscription, remote product security or product safety related device management and software and firmware updates will be performed when the processing is necessary for the compliance with a legal obligation to which the manufacturer is subject (e.g. applicable product liability law, emergency call regulation) or when the processing is necessary in order to protect the vital interests of the respective vehicle users and passengers.

The establishment of a secure radio network connection and the related remote updates are not affected by privacy settings and will be performed in principal after an initiation by the vehicle user following a respective notification.

The system is able to notify receipt of an update as soon as it is connected to an exterior Wi-Fi network or a mobile network. Large updates are downloaded only via the Wi-Fi network.

The availability of an update is notified on the Info Display at the end of a trip with an option of immediate installation or postponement of installation.

The installation time is variable and can take several minutes with a maximum of about 30 minutes. A notification will give an estimate of the duration and a description of the update.

Updates can be checked manually via the Info Display. Follow the on-screen prompts in the respective menu.

Info Display ⇨ 79.

**Notice**

Steps for downloading and installing updates may vary by vehicle.

For safety reasons and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, the installation must be carried out with the ignition on without starting the engine. The installation cannot be carried out in the following cases:



- engine running
- emergency call in progress
- insufficient vehicle battery charge

#### Notice

During the installation process, the vehicle may not be operational.

If the update has failed, seek the assistance of a workshop.

## Registered trademarks

#### Apple Inc.

Apple CarPlay™ is a trademark of Apple Inc.

App Store® and iTunes Store® are registered trademarks of Apple Inc.

iPhone®, iPod®, iPod touch®, iPod nano®, iPad® and Siri® are registered trademarks of Apple Inc.

#### Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

Bluetooth® is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

#### DivX, LLC

DivX® and DivX Certified® are registered trademarks of DivX, LLC.

#### EnGIS Technologies, Inc.

BringGo® is a registered trademark of EnGIS Technologies, Inc.

#### Google Inc.

Android™ and Google Play™ Store are trademarks of Google Inc.

#### Stitcher Inc.

Stitcher™ is a trademark of Stitcher, Inc.

#### Velcro Companies

Velcro® is a registered trademark of Velcro Companies.

#### Verband der Automobilindustrie e.V.

AdBlue® is a registered trademark of the VDA.

## Vehicle data recording and privacy

### Emergency call data recording and privacy

#### Data processing

All processing of personal information by the emergency call function complies with the framework for protection of personal information established by regulation 2016/679 (GDPR) and directive 2002/58/EC of the European Parliament and the Council, and in particular, seeks to protect the vital interests of the data subject, in accordance with article 6.1, paragraph d) of regulation 2016/679.

The processing of personal information is strictly limited to the requirements of the emergency call function used with the European emergency call number.

The emergency call function is only able to collect and process the following data relating to the vehicle: chassis number, type (passenger

vehicle or light commercial vehicle), fuel type or power source, three most recent locations and direction of travel, number of passengers and a timestamped log file recording technical data related to the system's operation.

The recipients of the processed data are the emergency call handling centres designated by the relevant national authorities in the territory in which they are located, enabling priority routing and handling of calls to the emergency number.

### **Data storage**

Data contained in the system's memory is not accessible from outside the system until a call is made. The system is not traceable and is not continuously monitored in its normal operation mode.

The data in the system's internal memory is automatically and continuously erased. Only the vehicle's three most recent locations, necessary for the normal functioning of the system, are stored.

When an emergency call is triggered, the data log is stored for no more than 13 hours.

### **Access to data**

You have the right to access the data and, if necessary, submit a request to rectify, erase or restrict the processing of any personal information not processed in accordance with the provisions of Regulation 2016/679 (GDPR). Third parties to which data has been communicated shall be notified of any rectification, erasure or restriction carried out in accordance with the aforementioned directive, unless doing so would be impossible or require a disproportionate effort.

You also have the right to lodge a complaint with the relevant data protection authority.

If you want to claim your above-mentioned rights please contact us per email at [privacyrights@mpsa.com](mailto:privacyrights@mpsa.com).

For more information regarding our contact details please take a look at our Privacy & Cookies Policy on our website.

### **Event data recorders**

Electronic control units are installed in your vehicle. Control units process data which is received e.g. by vehicle sensors, or which they generate themselves or exchange amongst themselves. Some control units are necessary for the safe functioning of your vehicle, others assist you while you drive (driver assistance systems), while others provide comfort or infotainment functions.

The following contains general information about data processing in the vehicle. You will find additional information as to which specific data is uploaded, stored and passed on to third parties and for what purpose in your vehicle under the key word Data Protection closely linked to the references for the affected functional characteristics in the relevant

Owner's Manual or in the general terms of sale. These are also available online.

## Operating data in the vehicle

Control units process data for operation of the vehicle.

This data may include:

- vehicle status information (e.g. speed, movement delay, lateral acceleration, wheel rotation rate, "seat belts fastened" display)
- ambient conditions (e.g. temperature, rain sensor, distance sensor)

As a rule such data is transient and is not stored for longer than an operational cycle, and only processed on board the vehicle itself. Often control units include data storage (including the vehicle key). This is used to allow information to be documented temporarily or permanently on vehicle condition, component stress, maintenance requirements and technical events and errors.

Depending on technical equipment levels, the data stored is as follows:

- system component operating states (e.g. fill level, tyre pressure, battery status)
- faults and defects in important system components (e.g. lights, brakes)
- system reactions in special driving situations (e.g. triggering of an airbag, actuation of the stability control systems)
- information on events damaging the vehicle
- for electric vehicles the amount of charge in the high-voltage battery, estimated range

In special cases (e.g. if the vehicle has detected a malfunction), it may be necessary to save data that would otherwise just be volatile.

When you use services (e.g. repairs, maintenance), the operating data saved can be read together with the vehicle identification number and used where necessary. Staff working for the service network (e.g. garages, manufacturers) or third parties (e.g.

breakdown services) can read the data from the vehicle. The same applies to warranty work and quality assurance measures.

Data is generally read via the OBD (On-Board Diagnostics) port prescribed by law in the vehicle. The operating data read documents the technical condition of the vehicle or individual components and assists with fault diagnosis, compliance with warranty obligations and quality improvement. This data, in particular information on component stress, technical events, operator errors and other faults, is transmitted to the manufacturer where appropriate, together with the vehicle identification number. The manufacturer is also subject to product liability. The manufacturer potentially also uses operating data from vehicles for product recalls. This data can also be used to check customer warranty and guarantee claims.

Fault memories in the vehicle can be reset by a service company when carrying out servicing or repairs or at your request.

## Comfort and infotainment functions

Comfort settings and custom settings can be stored in the vehicle and changed or reset at any time.

Depending on the equipment level in question, these include

- seat and steering wheel position settings
- chassis and air conditioning settings
- custom settings such as interior lighting

You can input your own data in the infotainment functions for your vehicle as part of the selected features.

Depending on the equipment level in question, these include

- multimedia data such as music, videos or photos for playback in an integrated multimedia system
- address book data for use with an integrated hands-free system or an integrated navigation system

- input destinations
- data on the use of online services

This data for comfort and infotainment functions can be stored locally in the vehicle or be kept on a device that you have connected to the vehicle (e.g. a smartphone, USB stick or MP3 player). Data that you have input yourself can be deleted at any time.

This data can only be transmitted out of the vehicle at your request, particularly when using online services in accordance with the settings selected by you.

### Smartphone integration, e.g. Android Auto or Apple CarPlay

If your vehicle is equipped accordingly, you can connect your smartphone or another mobile device to the vehicle so that you can control it via the controls integrated in the vehicle. The smartphone image and sound can be output via the multimedia system in this case. At the same time, specific information is transmitted to your smartphone. Depending on the type of integration,

this includes data such as position data, day / night mode and other general vehicle information. For more information, please see the operating instructions for the vehicle / infotainment system.

Integration allows selected smartphone apps to be used, such as navigation or music playback. No further integration is possible between smartphone and vehicle, in particular active access to vehicle data. The nature of further data processing is determined by the provider of the app used. Whether you can define settings, and if so which ones, is dependent on the app in question and your smartphone's operating system.

## Online services

If your vehicle has a radio network connection, this allows data to be exchanged between your vehicle and other systems. The radio network connection is made possible by means of a transmitter device in your vehicle or a mobile device provided by you (e.g. a smartphone). Online functions can be used via this radio network connection. These include online services and applications / apps provided to you by the manufacturer or other providers.

## Proprietary services

In the case of the manufacturer's online services, the relevant functions are described by the manufacturer in an appropriate location (e.g. Owner's Manual, the manufacturer's website) and the associated data protection information is provided. Personal data may be used to provide online services. Data exchange for this purpose takes place via a protected connection, e.g. using the manufacturer's IT systems provided for the purpose. Collection,

processing and use of personal data for the purposes of preparation of services take place solely on the basis of legal permission, e.g. in the case of a legally prescribed emergency communication system or a contractual agreement, or by virtue of consent.

You can activate or deactivate the services and functions (which are subject to charges to some extent) and, in some cases, the vehicle's entire radio network connection. This does not include statutory functions and services such as an emergency communication system.

## Third party services

If you make use of online services from other providers (third parties), these services are subject to the liability and data protection and usage conditions of the provider in question. The manufacturer frequently has no influence over the content exchanged in this regard.

Therefore, please note the nature, scope and purpose of the collection and use of personal data within the scope of third party services provided by the service provider in question.

## Radio Frequency Identification (RFID)

RFID technology is used in some vehicles for functions such as immobiliser. It is also used in connection with conveniences such as radio remote controls for door locking / unlocking and starting. RFID technology in Vauxhall vehicles does not use or record personal information or link with any other Vauxhall system containing personal information.

## Index

**A**

Accessories and vehicle modifications .....	229
Active emergency braking....	75, 199
AdBlue.....	74, 180, 282
Adjustable air vents .....	169
Advanced parking assist.....	206
Airbag and belt tensioners .....	70
Airbag deactivation .....	40, 70
Airbag label.....	35
Airbag system .....	35
Air conditioning regular operation .....	170
Air conditioning system .....	161
Air intake .....	170
Air vents.....	169
Antilock brake system .....	187
Antilock brake system (ABS) .....	72
Anti-theft alarm system .....	17
Anti-theft locking system .....	16
Appearance care.....	266
Armrest.....	30, 32, 48
Ashtrays .....	64
Audio.....	109, 143
Automatic anti-dazzle .....	21
Automatic crash notification.....	84
Automatic light control .....	88
Automatic locking .....	14
Automatic transmission .....	183

Autostop.....	75, 175
Auxiliary heater.....	168

**B**

Battery discharge protection .....	94
Belts.....	32
BlueInjection.....	180
Bluetooth audio streaming..	112, 147
Bluetooth connection.....	128, 153
Bonnet .....	234
Brake and clutch system .....	72
Brake assist .....	188
Brake fluid .....	236, 273
Brake light.....	243
Brakes .....	187, 236
Breakdown.....	264
Bulb replacement .....	240

**C**

Capacities .....	282
Catalytic converter .....	180
CD player.....	112
Central locking system .....	10
Centre console lighting .....	94
Centre console storage .....	47
Changing tyre and wheel size ...	252
Charging system .....	71
Child locks .....	14
Child restraint installation locations .....	45
Child restraints.....	41

Child restraint systems .....	41
Cigarette lighter .....	64
Climate control systems.....	160
Clock.....	62
Control indicators.....	68
Control of the vehicle .....	171
Controls.....	58
Convex shape .....	19
Coolant and antifreeze.....	273
Cornering lights.....	90
Cruise control .....	75, 192
Cupholders .....	47
Curtain airbag system .....	40

**D**

DAB.....	109, 143
Danger, Warnings and Cautions ...	4
Daytime running lights .....	90
Declaration of conformity.....	284
DEF.....	180
Deflation detection system.....	74
Descent control system .....	73, 190
Diesel exhaust fluid.....	180
Diesel fuel system bleeding .....	239
Door open .....	76
Doors.....	15
Driver alert.....	220
Driver assistance systems.....	192
Driver Information Centre.....	76

Driving characteristics and towing tips .....	225
Driving hints.....	171

**E**

Electric adjustment .....	19
Electrical system.....	248
Electronic climate control system	164
Electronic key system.....	8
Electronic Stability Control and Traction Control system....	73, 188
Electronic Stability Control and Traction Control system off.....	73
Emergency call.....	84
Emergency call data recording and privacy.....	287
End-of-life vehicle recovery .....	233
Engine coolant .....	235
Engine coolant temperature .....	73
Engine coolant temperature gauge .....	66
Engine data .....	278
Engine exhaust .....	179
Engine identification.....	276
Engine oil .....	234, 273, 277, 282
Engine oil level monitor.....	66
Engine oil pressure .....	74
Entry lighting .....	94
ERA GLONASS.....	85
Event data recorders.....	288

Exhaust filter.....	73, 179
Exit lighting .....	94
Exterior care .....	266
Exterior light .....	75
Exterior lighting.....	87
Exterior mirrors.....	19
External devices.....	112, 147

**F**

First aid.....	52
First aid kit .....	52
Fixed air vents .....	169
Floor mats.....	268
Folding mirrors .....	20
Forward collision alert.....	197
Front airbag system .....	38
Front fog lights .....	75, 91, 243
Front pedestrian protection.....	202
Front seats.....	27
Fuel.....	221
Fuel for diesel engines .....	222
Fuel for petrol engines .....	221
Fuel gauge .....	66
Fuel tank.....	282
Fuses .....	248

**G**

Gauges.....	64
Gear shifting.....	72
General information .....	224

Glass panel .....	24
Glovebox .....	47

**H**

Halogen headlights .....	240
Hand brake.....	187
Hazard warning flashers .....	90
Headlight flash .....	89
Headlight range adjustment .....	89
Headlights.....	87
Headlights when driving abroad ..	90
Head restraints .....	26
Head-up display.....	81
Heated mirrors .....	20
Heated rear window .....	23
Heated steering wheel .....	58
Heated windscreen.....	24
Heating .....	30
Heating and ventilation system .	160
High beam .....	75, 88
High beam assist.....	75, 88
Hill start assist .....	188
Horn .....	59

**I**

Identification plate .....	275
Ignition switch positions .....	172
Immobiliser .....	19
Indicators.....	64, 68
Inductive charging.....	63
Info Display.....	79

Instrument panel illumination control .....	93
Instrument panel overview .....	56
Interior care .....	268
Interior lighting.....	93
Interior lights .....	93, 248
Interior mirrors.....	21
Introduction .....	3

**J**

Jump starting .....	263
---------------------	-----

**K**

Keys .....	6
Keys, locks.....	6

**L**

Lane departure warning.....	73, 218
Lashing eyes .....	52
LED headlights.....	90, 242
Lighting features.....	94
Light switch .....	87
Load compartment .....	15, 48
Load compartment cover .....	50
Loading information .....	54
Low beam.....	75
Low fuel .....	75

**M**

Malfunction indicator light .....	71
Manual anti-dazzle .....	21

Manual transmission .....	186
Manual windows .....	22
Misted light covers .....	92
Multimedia.....	133
Multimedia Navi Pro.....	96

**N**

Navigation.....	115
New vehicle running-in .....	172
Number plate light .....	248

**O**

Object detection systems.....	203
Odometer .....	65
Oil, engine.....	273, 277
Outside temperature .....	61
Overrun cut-off .....	175

**P**

Panoramic view system.....	213
Parking .....	178
Parking assist .....	203
Parking brake.....	72, 187
Parking lights .....	92
Particulate filter.....	179
Performance .....	279
Performing work .....	233
Phone.....	128, 153
Phone projection.....	112, 147
Power button.....	173
Power outlets .....	62



Power windows .....	22
Preheating .....	73
Puncture.....	258

**Q**

Quickheat.....	168
----------------	-----

**R**

Radio Frequency Identification (RFID).....	291
Radio remote control .....	7
Rain sensor.....	75
RDS.....	109, 143
REACH.....	285
Reading lights .....	93
Rear floor storage cover .....	51
Rear fog light .....	75, 92, 243
Rear seats .....	31, 32
Rear view camera .....	216
Rear window wiper and washer . .	61
Recommended fluids and lubricants .....	273, 277
Refuelling .....	223
Registered trademarks.....	287
Reverse light.....	243
Reversing lights .....	92
Ride control systems.....	188
Roadside assistance.....	85
Roof.....	24
Roof load.....	54
Roof rack .....	53

**S**

Safety belts.....	32
Seat adjustment .....	28
Seat belt reminder .....	70
Seat belts .....	32
Seat heating.....	30
Seat position .....	27
Selective catalytic reduction.....	180
Selective ride control.....	191
Service .....	170, 270
Service display .....	67
Service information .....	270
Service vehicle soon .....	71
Side airbag system .....	39
Side blind spot alert.....	75, 211
Sidights.....	87
Side turn lights .....	247
Software update.....	285
SOS.....	84
Spare wheel .....	258
Speech recognition.....	126, 152
Speed limiter.....	76, 195
Speedometer .....	64
Starting and operating.....	172
Starting the engine .....	174
Steering.....	172
Steering wheel adjustment .....	58
Steering wheel controls .....	58
Stop engine.....	71
Stop-start system.....	175

Storage.....	47
Storage compartments.....	47
Sun visor lights .....	93
Sun visors .....	24
Symbols .....	4
System check.....	71

**T**

Tachometer .....	65
Tail lights .....	243
Three-point seat belt .....	33
Through-loading facility.....	48
Tools .....	248
Tow bar.....	224
Towing.....	224, 264
Towing another vehicle .....	265
Towing equipment .....	226
Towing the vehicle .....	264
Traffic Announcements.....	109, 143
Traffic sign assistant.....	217
Trailer hitch.....	224
Trailer towing .....	225
Tread depth .....	251
Trip odometer .....	65
Turn lights .....	69, 91
Tyre chains .....	253
Tyre deflation detection system .	251
Tyre designations .....	249
Tyre pressure .....	250

Tyre pressures .....	283
Tyre repair kit .....	253

## U

Ultrasonic parking assist.....	203
Upholstery.....	268
USB devices.....	112, 147
USB port.....	62
Using this manual .....	3

## V

Vauxhall Connect.....	85
Vehicle battery .....	237
Vehicle checks.....	233
Vehicle data.....	277
Vehicle data recording and privacy.....	288
Vehicle dimensions .....	281
Vehicle identification number ....	275
Vehicle jack.....	248
Vehicle messages .....	82
Vehicle personalisation .....	83
Vehicle security.....	16
Vehicle specific data .....	3

Vehicle storage.....	232
Vehicle tools.....	248
Ventilation.....	160

## W

Warning chimes .....	83
Warning lights.....	64, 68
Warning triangle .....	52
Washer fluid .....	236
Wheel	
Tightening torque.....	258
Wheel changing .....	256
Wheel covers .....	252
Wheels and tyres .....	249
Windows.....	21
Windscreen.....	21
Windscreen wiper and washer ...	59
Winter tyres .....	249
Wiper blade replacement .....	239

Copyright by Vauxhall Motors Ltd.

The information contained in this publication is effective as of the date indicated below. Vauxhall Motors Ltd. reserves the right to make changes to the technical specifications, features and design of the vehicles relative to the information contained in this publication, as well as changes to the publication itself.

Edition: February 2023, Vauxhall Motors Ltd.

Printed on chlorine-free bleached paper.

ID-VCDAORIE2302-en

